ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

HISTORICAL

ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

CONTAINING

Accidence and Word-Formation.

BY THE

REV. RICHARD MORRIS, LL. D.,

HONORARY M. A. OXFORD,

PRESIDENT OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY, LONDON.

Author of " Historical Outlines of English Accidence,"
Editor of " Old English Homilies," " Cursor Mundi," etc.

NEW EDITION.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

549 & 551 BROADWAY.

1879.

PREFACE.

THE present treatise has been drawn up at the urgent request of numerous teachers, who asked for an easier and more elementary work than my "Historical Outlines of English Accidence," published some two years ago. I have endeavoured to the best of my ability to produce a short historical grammar that might be advantageously used as an introduction to my larger book.

I have not, however, made a new book by cutting down and compressing the old one. These "Elementary Lessons" constitute an entirely indepen-

dent work, with many peculiarities of arrangement that at once distinguish it from the "Accidence." A reference to the earlier chapters alone will at once show how very different the two books are. The illustrative examples scattered throughout the present work are for the most part new, very few of them having been quoted elsewhere.

I trust that, to those engaged in the higher education of boys and girls, these lessons will prove helpful in promoting a more thorough knowledge of our "mother tongue," the study of which has of late years been put on a better footing, and has acquired a distinct, and by no means an unimportant, place in the curriculum of a liberal education.

Syntax is not treated of in this volume, but I hope before long to be able to get out both a small and ;e book on this important subject.

My best thanks are due to my kind friend, the Rev. W. W. Skeat, for his assistance in revising the proof-sheets. At his suggestion I have adopted the classification of the periods of the Language on p. 33, and the mnemonics on p. 48.

CONTRACTIONS.

Allit. = Alliterative.
Anat. Mel. = Anatomy of Melancholy
C.T. = Canterbury Tales.
Dan. = Danish.
De Reg. = De Regimine Principum.
C. Mundi. = Cursor Mundi ;
    C. = Cotton MS.
    F. = Fairfax MS.
    G. = Göttingen MS.
    T. = Trinity MS.
E.E. = Early English.
Fr. = French.
Ger. = German.
Gest. Rom. = Gesta Romanorum.
Gr. = Greek.
Icel. = Icelandic.
Kath. = St. Katherine.
Lat. = Latin.
M.E. = Middle English.
N.Fr. = Norman-French.
O.E. = Old English.
O.E. Misc. = O.E. Miscellany.
O.E. Hom. = Old English Homilies.
O.Fr. = Old French.
O.H. Ger. = Old High German.
P. of C. = Pricke of Conscience.
P. of Pl. = Pastime of Pleasure.
Pol. Rel. = Political, Religious.
T.E. = Tudor English.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

CHAPTER II.

CHAPTER III.

CHAPTER X.

CHAPTER XI.

CHAPTER XII.

CHAPTER XIII.

CHAPTER XIV.

CHAPTER XV.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS

HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

CHAPTER I.

I.—Relation of English to the Languages of Europe and Asia.

ENGLISH BELONGS TO THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY
OF LANGUAGES.

1. Most of the nations of Europe, and some in Asia, (India, Persia, Afghanistan,) have sprung from one common stock, and are therefore related to one another, by blood and by language.

2. These nations philologists have called the **Indo-European** or **Aryan** family.

The ancestors of the Aryan race once lived together in the highlands north of the Himâlaya mountains.

A time came, of which history gives us no account, when the old Aryan tribes separated from each other, and left their ancient abode to seek new settlements.

Two great tribes, the old Hindus and the Persians, crossed the Himâlaya mountains, and found new homes on the banks of the Ganges and Indus, from whence they soon spread over Hindostan, Persia, &c.

The rest of the Aryan tribes, at different times, and at considerable intervals, travelled westward and came into Europe.

3. The first Aryan comers were the **Kelts,** who settled in parts of Germany, Italy, Spain, Gaul, and the British Isles. Their dialects still survive in Wales, the Highlands of Scotland, Ireland, the Isle of Man, and in Armorica or Brittany.

The **Kelts** were driven out of their settlements in Italy, and pushed further westward by the advance of the **Italic** tribes.

About the same time the peninsula of Greece was peopled by the **Hellenic** or **Grecian** tribes.

Next came the **Teutons,** who took up their abode in Germany and Scandinavia. The last Aryan settlement was made by the **Lithuanians** and **Slavonians.**

The Slavonians gradually spread themselves over Russia, Bohemia, Poland, &c.

The Lithuanians settled on the Baltic coast in Prussia, Livonia, and Lithuania.

4. Of the people living in Europe the Fins, Lapps, Esths, Basques, Hungarians, and Turks, do not belong to the Indo-European family.

§. TABLE OF INDO-EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

I. Hindu	1. Sanscrit (dead). 2. Hindû, Hindustanî, Bengalî, Mahratti (all descendants from the Sanscrit). 3. Cingalese (language of Ceylon). 4. Gypsy dialect.
II. Iranian	1. Zend (the old language of Persia) 2. Persian.
III. Keltic	1. Bas Breton or Armorican 2. Welsh. 3. Erse or Irish. 4. Gaelic or Highland Scotch. 5. Manx.

IV. Italic or Romanic	1. Latin (and old Italian Dialects, Oscan and Umbrian).
	 2. The Romance dialects which have sprung from Latin.
	     (*a*) Italian.
	     (*b*) French.
	     (*c*) Spanish and Portuguese
	     (*d*) Roumansch.
	     (*e*) Wallachian.

V. Hellenic or Grecian	1. Ancient Greek, with its various dialects, Attic, Ionic, Doric, &c. 2. Modern Greek.
VI. Teutonic	1. Low - German.—English, Dutch, Flemish. 2. Scandinavian.—Icelandic, Swedish, Danish, Norwegian. 3. High-German.—Modern German.
VII. Lettic	1. Old Prussian (dead). 2. Lettish.
VIII. Slavonic	1. Russian. 2. Polish. 3. Bohemian

II. Relation of English to the Teutonic Group.

ENGLISH IS A TEUTONIC LANGUAGE, AND BELONGS
TO THE LOW-GERMAN DIALECTS.

6. The Teutonic group is that with which we are more nearly connected, English being one of its most important members.

There are three great divisions of the Teutonic people; (1) **Low-German,** (2) **Scandinavian,** (3) **High-German.**

The **Low-Germans** formerly lived near the low-lying lands, by the mouths of the rivers Rhine, Weser, and Elbe.

The **Scandinavians,** probably an off-shoot from the **Low-Germans,** settled in Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and at a later period in Iceland.

The **High-Germans** lived inland, in the highlands south of Germany (Bavaria, &c.)

7. The word *Dutch,* now only applied to the people of Holland, formerly denoted all German-speaking people. The Germans still call themselves *Deutsche,* and their language *Deutsch.*

8. The word *Dutch* is an adjective signifying national,[1] and was the name by which the old Teutons called themselves in contradistinction to other people, whose language they were unable to understand. They styled themselves the (intelligible)

---

[1] Cp. O.H. Ger. *diot,* O.E. *theod* people; O.H. Germ *tisc,* O.E. *theodisc* of the people, popular.

people, but called others, as the Romans, and the Kelts in Britain, *Walsch* and *Welsh*.

Ancient nations gave themselves polite names, but spoke contemptuously of their neighbours. The old Hindus called themselves *Aryans* from *árya*, noble : the Slavonians or *Slaves* got their name from *Slavo*, a word *or* renown.

9. **English** belongs to the Low-German division of the Teutonic languages. Its nearest living relations are *Dutch* (the language of Holland), *Flemish* (once the court language of Brabant), *Frisian* (between the Scheldt and Jutland and on the islands near the shore), *Plat-Deutsch* (on the Baltic coast); *Gothic* (the language of the Goths in the ancient province of Dacia) is a *dead* language. The Gothic translation of the Gospels by *Wulfila* or Ulfilas (in the fourth century) is the oldest monument of Teutonic literature extant. The *old Saxon* is also a dead language ; it was once spoken between the Rhine and the Elbe in Munster, Essen, and Cleves.

10. TABLE OF TEUTONIC LANGUAGES.

I. **Low-German**	1. Gothic (dead). 2. Old Saxon (dead). 3. English and Lowland-Scotch. 4. Frisian. 5. Dutch. 6. Flemish.
II. **Scandinavian**	1. Icelandic. 2. Swedish. 3. Danish. 4. Norwegian.
III. **High-German**	Modern High-German, with its older stages; Middle High-German, and Old High-German.

CHAPTER II.

History of the English Language.

ORIGIN OF THE ENGLISH.

11. The English language was brought into Britain about the middle of the fifth century by Low-German tribes, commonly known as Angles, Saxons, and Jutes (Frisians).

These Teutonic invaders were known to the Britons as *Saxons*, but they called themselves *English* (Ænglisc), and their new home *England* (Ængla-land, the land of the *Angles*).

The term Angle or Engle is supposed by some to take its name from the district of Angeln in the Duchy of Schleswig.

12. The *Frisians* or Jutes settled in Kent; the *Angles* in the north, east, and central parts of Britain; and the *Saxons* in the south and west parts of the island (in Essex, Sussex, Wessex, &c.)

The Lowlands of Scotland once formed part of the old Northumbrian kingdom, hence *Lowland-Scotch* is an *English dialect*.

Foreign Elements in English.

ENGLISH WAS ORIGINALLY AN INFLECTED AND UN-
MIXED LANGUAGE, BUT IS NOW AN UNINFLECTED
AND COMPOSITE LANGUAGE.

13. The language that was brought into Britain by
the Low-German invaders, was an inflected and syn-
thetic language, like its congener Modern German, and
its more distant relatives, Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin.

Though modern English has lost most of the older
grammatical endings, and has been reduced to an
analytical language (like Danish, French, and Persian),
it still belongs, by virtue of its descent, to the family
of inflected languages.

14. The English language brought over by the
Angles, Saxons, &c., was an *unmixed* language.

There were no non-Teutonic elements in its vo-
cabulary.

It is now a composite or mixed language, having
adopted words from various nations with whom the
English people have had dealings at different times.

The foreign elements in English may therefore be
treated historically.

I.—The Keltic Element in English.

15. The English invaders of Britain displaced the
old Keltic inhabitants, and did not largely mix with
them ; their language was, therefore, but little in-
fluenced by the speech of the British tribes. It affected
the spoken far more than the written language, for fro·

the ninth to the twelfth century English literature furnishes but few examples of borrowed Keltic terms. The words of this period are *barrow* (mound), *brock, breeches, clout, crock, kiln, cradle, mattock, pool.*

In the literature of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries we find more frequent traces of Keltic terms, of which the following still survive :—*boast, boisterous, bribe, cam* (crooked), *crag, dainty, darn, daub, fleam, glen, havoc, kiln, mop, pillow.*

16. The Norman-French contained some few Keltic terms borrowed from the old Gaulish ; some of these found their way into English, as : *bag, barren, bargain, barter, barrel, basin, basket, bonnet, bucket, bran, button, chemise, car, cart, dagger, gravel, gown, harness, marl, mitten, motley, osier, pot, rogue, ribbon, varlet, vassal, wicket.*

17. A few words, the names of Keltic things, are of recent introduction : as, *bannock, bard, bog, brogue, clan, claymore, clog, log, fillibeg, gag, kilt, pibrock, plaid, pony, shamrock, slab, slogan, whiskey.*

18. The oldest geographical names are of course Keltic, especially names of rivers and of mountains ; as, *Avon, Ouse, Esk, Exe, Usk, Thames, Derwent, Dee, &c., Pen-y-Gent, Helvellyn, &c., Aberdeen, Kent, Dover, &c.*

II.—The Scandinavian Element in English.

19. Towards the end of the eighth century (A.D. 787) the Northmen of Scandinavia (Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Iceland) commonly known as **Danes**, made descents upon the East coasts of England, Scotland, the Hebrides, and Ireland, as well as in other parts of Europe.

In the ninth century they obtained a permanent footing in the North and East parts of England : and in the eleventh century a Danish dynasty was established on the throne for nearly thirty years (A.D. 1016—1042).

The Scandinavians were a Teutonic people and their language very closely resembled the old English speech. It is, therefore, no easy matter to determine the exact number of words introduced by the old Northmen. Many of the borrowed words have taken an English form, so as to be no longer distinguished as pure Scandinavian. The spoken language was affected by the Danes far more than the written language, especially in Northumberland, Durham, Yorkshire, Lancashire, Cumberland, Lincoln, and Norfolk, where many Danish words are still to be found. In the eleventh and twelfth centuries only a few Scandinavian words found their way into the written language ; such words are, *aren,* are ; *by*, a town; *fel*, a hill ; *til*, to.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries they became more common and are easily discernible ; many of these still survive, as *blunt*, *bole* (of a tree), *bound* (for a journey), *busk*, *buckle-to* (buskle), *cake*, *call*, *cast*, *curl*, *cat*, *dairy*, *die*, *daze*, *droop*, *fellow*, *flit*, *fro*, *froward*, *gab*, *gait*, *ill*, *irk-* (some), *kid*, *kindle*, *loft*, *low* (flame), *neave* (fist), *muck*, *odd*, *puck*, *plough*, *root*, *same*, *scold*, *sly*, *shy*, *tarn* (lake), *ugly* (E.E. *ugge*, to fear), *weak; gar* (to cause, make), *greet* (to weep), are used by Spenser.

20. Very many Norse words once very common in old Northern writers have gone out of use, or have become provincial, as, *at*, to (before infinitives) *beck* (stream), *erre* (scar), *last* (fault), *lit*, (stain), *layte* (to seek), *mun* (must, shall), *trine* (to go), *tyne* (to lose), *tynsel* (loss), *throp* or *thorp* (town), &c.

21. Many names of places ending in *by* (town), *fell* (hill), *beck* (stream), *shaw* (wood), *garth* (enclosure), indicate Danish settlements ; *firth* is the Scandinavian *fiord* (cp. Mil-ford, Water-ford).

22. The Danish invasions did much to unsettle the inflexions in the North of England. Before the Norman-French conquest we find the *n* of the infinitive falling off, and the verb in the third person singular present indicative ending in *es* instead of *eth*. The use of the plural suffix in *as* was frequently extended to nouns that originally formed the plural by the suffix *a* or *u*. The dialects of the North and North-East of England in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries are almost as flexionless as modern English. These parts of England were the last to come under the influence of Norman-French.

III.—The Latin Element in English.

1. LATIN OF THE FIRST PERIOD : connected with the Roman Invasion.

23. The Roman occupation of Britain for nearly four centuries (from A.D. 43 to A.D. 426) left its traces in the few names of places, as : *Chester, Gloucester, Dorchester, Exeter, Stratton, Lincoln,* &c.

Fortified towns and great roads became familiar objects to the old English settlers in Britain ; so *castra,* a camp, and *strata,* a street, soon passed into English under the forms *ceastre* = chester, and *strǣt* = street. Probably *portus,* a port, as in *Ports*-mouth, was known to the oldest English. Cp. O.E. *port-gerefa,* a *port-reeve*.

2. LATIN OF THE SECOND PERIOD: St. Augustine's Mission.

24. The introduction of Christianity about the end of the sixth century (A.D. 596) brought England into connection with Rome, and during the four following centuries a large number of Latin words became familiar to educated Englishmen.

The words introduced into the language during this period were, for the most part, connected with the Church, its services and observances, as : *ancor,* hermit (anchoreta) ; *postol,* apostle (apostolus) ; *biscop,* bishop (episcopus) ; *calc,* chalice (calix) ; *clustor,* cloister (claustrum); *diacon,* deacon (diaconus) ; *clerc,* clerk (clericus) ; *munec,* monk (monachus) ; *mæsse,* mass (missa) ; *mynster,* minster (monasterium); *preost,* priest (presbyter) ; *sanct,* saint (sanctus) ; *carited,* charity (caritas) ; *ælmesse,* alms (eleëmosyna) ; *predician,* preach (prædicare) ; *regol,* rule (regula).

A few foreign articles now came in for the first time, and retained their Latin names.

(1) A few articles of *food, clothing, ornaments,* &c. : *butor,* butter (butyrum) ; *cêse,* cheese (caseus) ; *pæl,* pall (pallium) ; *tunic,* tunic (tunica).

(2) *Trees and Plants* : *cedar,* cedar (cedrus) ; *fic,* fig (ficus) ; *peru,* pear (pirum) ; *persuc,* peach (persicum) ; *lactuce,* lettice (lactuca) ; *lilie,* lily (lilium) ; *pipor,* pepper (piper) ; *pisa,* pease (pisum), &c.

(3) *Animals* : *mere-greot,* pearl (margarita) ; *camel,* camel (camelus) ; *culufre,* dove (columba) ; *leo,* lion (leo) ; *pard,* leopard (pardus) ; *ostre,* oyster (ostrea) ; *pâwa,* peacock (pavo) ; *trûht,* trout (tructa) ; *turtle,* turtle (turtur) ; *olfend* (camel), a corruption of *elephant.*

(4) *Weights* : *pund*, pound (pondus) ; *ynce*, inch, ounce (uncia), &c.

(5) *Miscellaneous* : *candel*, candle (candela); *disc*, disk (discus) ; *culter*, coulter (culter) ; *marman* -(stan), marble stone (marmor) ; *tæfl*, table (tabula) ; *mynet*, mint (moneta).

3. LATIN OF THE THIRD PERIOD : introduced by the Norman Conquest.

25. The Norman Conquest in 1066 was a remarkable event in the history of the English nation, and affected the language more than anything that happened either before or after it.

When the Normans made themselves masters of England they attempted to spread their language throughout the island. French became the language of the court and of the nobility : of the clergy and of literature : of the universities and schools : of the courts of law, and of Parliament : but French did not succeed in displacing English, for the great body of the common people refused to give up their mother-tongue, and from time to time there arose men who wrote in English for the benefit of those who knew nothing of French or Latin. After a while the Normans, being in the minority, mingled with the English and became one people. While the coalescence was taking place (in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries), there was a mingling of the two languages, and many French words found their way first into the spoken and afterwards into the written language.

After the distinction between Normans and English died out, Norman-French degenerated into a mere

provincial dialect and at last ceased to be spoken in England.

In 1349 boys no longer learnt their Latin through the medium of French.

In 1362 (the 36th of Edward III.) English super-seded French and Latin in the courts of law.

Certain political circumstances helped to bring about these changes, such as the loss of Normandy in John's reign, and the French wars of Edward III. (A.D. 1339).

Influence of Norman-French upon the Voca bulary of the English Language.

26. The Norman-French was essentially a Latin language, and the Norman Conquest added to English another very considerable Latin element.

The introduction of French words was the work of some time, and went on gradually from the eleventh to the fourteenth century.

They came into the written language at first sparingly. In the Saxon Chronicle from 1086 to 1154, we find less than twenty Norman-French words:—*court, dub* (1086), *peace* (1135), *treasure, prison, justice, rent, privilege, miracle* (1137), *standard, empress, countess, tower* (1140), *procession* (1154). A little before A.D. 1200 we find, *baron, chemise, custom, penance, palfrey, sot, jugler, master, mercy, manner, poor, riches, robbery, sacrament, charity, easy, font, sermon, passion, wait, saint, poverty, large, mantle, pride, service, spouse, taper, turn,* &c.

Even at this early period we find hybrids: *spus-had* = marriage; *crisme-cloth; maisterling* = prince;

bispused, bespoused = married ; *elmesful* = charitable, &c.

In Layamon's Brut (A.D. 1205), we find in the two versions less than one hundred words of French origin, among which we note especially, *admiral, abbey, annoy, attire, astronomy, camp, change, chattel, chieftain, close, country, cope, crown, cross, cry, delay duke, escape, espy, false, fail, fool, grace, guile, guise, hardily, honour, hostage, hurt, ire, cable, legion, messenger, machine, male, mile, mountain, nun, nunnery, pilgrim, post, power,* to *roll, school, scorn, senator, serve, serving, sire, suffer, use,*[1] &c.

27. Numerous French words were introduced into the language during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, by those native writers who for the first time translated religious treatises, poems, and romances, from the French into English. These compensated for the original imperfections of our language in religious, ethical, philosophical, and poetical terms; besides giving us numerous words referring to war, chivalry, and the chase. Towards the middle of the fourteenth century, French influence upon the language was at its height.

28. Chaucer has been wrongfully accused of corrupting the written language of his day, by fresh importation of Romance words. In his translations he doubtless was compelled to employ many new terms for ideas and things, as yet unfamiliar to his countrymen ; but his vocabulary is not more deeply tinged

---

[1] See the long list of French words in the "Ancren Riwle," "King Alexander" ("Hist. Outlines," pp. 339–344).

with French words than other writers of the fourteenth
century.   He no doubt gave his authority to words
already in general use, and rejected others in favour
of native terms, and thus did much to fix the native
vocabulary, and to stop the increasing inflow of bor-
rowed words.   It is said that not more than perhaps
one hundred Romance words used by Chaucer in his
various works have become obsolete.

   " It is a great but very widely spread error to suppose
that the influx of French words in the fourteenth
century was due alone to poetry and other branches
of pure literature.   The Law, which now first became
organized into a science, introduced many borrowed
terms from the nomenclature of Latin and French
jurisprudence ; the glass-worker, the enameller, the
architect, the brass-founder, the Flemish clothier, and
the other handicraftsmen, whom Norman tastes and
luxury invited, or domestic oppression expelled from
the Continent, brought with them the vocabularies of
their respective arts ; and Mediterranean commerce—
which was stimulated by the demand for English wool,
then the finest in Europe—imported from the harbours
of a sea where the French was the predominant lan-
guage, both new articles of merchandize and the
French designation for them.   The sciences too,
medicine, physics, geography, alchemy, astrology, all
of which became known to England chiefly through
French channels, added numerous specific terms to
the existing vocabulary ; and very many of the words
first employed in English writings as a part of the
technical phraseology of these various arts and know-
ledges, soon passed out into the domain of common
life, in modified or untechnical senses, and thus became

incorporated into the general tongue of society and
of books."[1]

29. But when the English vocabulary was thus in.
creased by this great influx of French terms, many of
the native words went out of use. Thus, if we take a
thirteenth-century version of the Creed, we find *ikenned,*
conceived ; *ipined was,* suffered ; *lihte,* descended;
steih, ascended ; *imennesse of haluwen,* communion
of saints ; *ariste,* resurrection. In a fourteenth-century
copy (A.D. 1340) of the Lord's Prayer we find *yeldinges,*
trespasses ; *yelderes,* trespassers ; *vondinge,* temptation ;
vri, deliver. Wickliffe has *dettis, dettour, delyvere.*[2]

Tyndal (1526) has *treaspasses, treaspas* (verb) for
dettis and *dettours.*

Many good old English words have gone out since
Chaucer's time, having been replaced by Romance
and Latin terms.

Influence of Norman-French upon the Grammar of English.

30. No language gives up its grammar and adopts
a new system of borrowed inflexions for its nouns,
adjectives, and verbs, &c.

It will part with the greater portion of its original
vocabulary, and yet leave grammatical forms almost
untouched. Norman-French words found an easy

---

[1] Marsh, "History and Origin of English Language," p. 66.

[2] Some older versions of the Pater Noster have *gultes* and
gulteres, trespasses and trespassers ; *shilde* (shield) for *fri* (free).

entrance into our language, but the influence of four
centuries only served to modify and to diminish
English inflexions, not to eradicate them by the sub-
stitution of new forms.

The Danish invasion had unsettled the language in
many parts of the country, and in the literature of the
eleventh century we see a disposition to adopt a less
inflexional structure, than in the earlier periods. Nearly
every nation of the Teutonic family has, by the loss
of inflexions, become almost as uninflexional as our
own.[1] The tendency of all highly inflected or syn-
thetical languages is to become analytical or non-
inflexional, so that, had there been no Norman Con-
quest, we should have followed the ordinary growth
of language, in replacing the older grammatical end-
ings by the use of relational words, as, *prepositions,
auxiliaries,* &c.

Doubtless the Norman invasion caused this change
to take place more rapidly and generally, than it would
otherwise have done, but even the slight direct
modifications here spoken of are not found much
before the fourteenth century.

31. The power of forming new words by derivation
from Teutonic roots was to a certain extent checked
by the introduction of so large a number of foreign
words.

Instead of making a new word by the old and
formerly familiar method of attaching a suffix to
a living native root, it became far easier to adopt a
term ready made.

---

[1] *German* and *Icelandic* have lost much less than other Teu-
tonic languages.

Cp. O.E. *thanc* (thought); *thanc-ol* (thoughtful); *thancful, thancwurth* (grateful); *thancolmod* (prudent); *thancwurthlíce* (gratefully), &c.

32. Some Norman-French suffixes replaced English ones.

In the fourteenth century we find the feminine -**ess** taking the place of -**en**, and -**ster**. Cp. *dwelleresse* in Wicliffe for *dwellstere; goddesse* (Chaucer) for Old English *gydin;* and the modern forms *bond-age, till-age, hindr-ance, knave-ry, wondr-ous,*[1] &c.

33. Some substitutes for inflexion came into use. The preposition **of** replaced the genitive -**s**; the comparison of Adjectives was expressed sometimes by **more** and **most** instead of -**er** and -**est**. Many Romance adjectives were inflected in the plural after the Norman-French method, as *wateres principales, capitalles lettres;* we also find *children ìnnocens* (La Tour Laundry, p. 104).

The Old English method of forming a plural adjective was by adding -**an** (-**en**), -**e**.

When used substantively, the Romance adjective formed its plural by the addition of -**s**, and the Old English by -**e**. Cp. "He ous tekth to knawe the *great-e* thinges vram the *littl-e,* the *preciouse-s* vram the *vile-s.*"[2] To this method we owe the early forms *gentles, familiars,* which became the models for many others, as "our *delicates* and *wantons*" (Holland's "Pliny," p. 603); the *yellowes* = the jaundice

<hr/>

[1] See "Historical Outlines," p. 39.
[2] He teaches us to know the great things from the little ones, the precious things from the vile ones.

(Hollinshed), "*yonges*" = young ones (L. Andrewe); *calms, shallows, worthies,* &c.

The use of Auxiliary Verbs (*have, shall, will*) became very common after the Norman Conquest.

34. The earliest and the greatest change was upon the pronunciation.

All the older vowel endings -*a*, -*o*, -*u*, became -*e*, and the terminations -*an*, -*as*, -*ath*, -*on*, -*od*, became -*en*, -*es*, -*eth*, -*en*, -*ed*.

After a time (fourteenth century) the final *e* fell off altogether, or was retained as an orthographical expedient. Cp. O.E. *nama*, name; *steorra*, M.E. *sterre*, star; O.E. *suna*, M.E. *sone* = son, &c.

35. This change of final vowels, simple as it was, served to weaken most of the inflexional forms.

It also helped to break down the old distinction of grammatical gender.

Thus the suffix -*a* was a sign of the masculine, and -*e* of the feminine gender; but when *webb-a* (m), *webb-e* (f), a weaver, came to be represented by the same form, *webbe*, then the final -**e**, if retained as a sign of gender, must be limited either to the masculine or feminine. An attempt was made to restrict it to the masculine, as *hunt-e*, a hunter, *spus-e*, a bridegroom; but *webbe*, a female weaver, occurs in "Piers Plowman." We now use *webster*.

We also find it frequently used up to the middle of the fourteenth century, to denote the *agent*. (Cp. the restricted sense of the old fem. -**ster**; *see* p. 63). We can easily understand how *widuwa* (a widow-er) dropped out of use, leaving *widuwe* (a widow), from

which a new masculine had to be formed; just as
in the sixteenth century we find *spouse* (m), and
spousesse (f) for the twelfth century *spus* (m), and
spuse (f).

36. After a time a few fresh vowel sounds found
their way into the language, as **u**, in duly; **oi** in boil;
the **a** in fame; **ei** in aisle.

37. Guttural sounds were softened down or became
mute.

(1) Initial and final **c** (k) became **ch, tch**, as O.E.
cild = child; *godlic = godlich* (godly); *streccan =
strecche* (stretch); **sc** became **sh**; *sceal* = shall; *fisc*
=fish; **g** became **i** (y), **w**; *geleáfa = ileafe* (be-lief);
hand-ge-weorc = handy-work; *fugol* = fowl; *dæg* =
day; *lagu* = law.

In some instances **cg** has become **j** (ge, dge) *cring-
an* = to cringe; *brycg* (M.E. *brigge*) = bridge.

(2) **c, ch, h, g,** have disappeared or become mute;
ic = ich = ih = I; *cniht* (M.E. kni*ch*t) = knight;
heah = high; *dirtig* = dirty; &c. Cp. the falling
away of **h** in *hláf* = loaf; *hring* = ring; *hnecca* =
neck; **k,** and **g,** before **n,** have become mute : *cneow*=
knee; *gnagan* = to gnaw. Cp. the weakening of **l**
before **f** and **k** in *calf, walk,* &c.

J (jet), **z, sh** (sure), **zh** (azure), were sounds that
came into use after the Norman Conquest.

38. A new accentuation was introduced by the
Normans. The old English accent like that of other
Teutonic nations was upon the root syllable as *un-
faith'-ful-ly, un-be-liev'-ing;* but in French there was a
ʒht stress of the voice upon the final syllable.

When French words were first adopted they retained their original accent, thus *raison* and *voyage* became *reasón* and *voydge* before they were accented as *reáson* and *vóyage.*

In the written poetical language of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find words of pure English origin ending in *-ing*, *-liche*, *-ness*, receiving an accent on the final syllable. Chaucer rhymes *gladnésse* with *distrésse.* But an attempt was made even as early as Chaucer's time to make borrowed words conform to the native accentuation, and in the " Canterbury Tales " we find *mórtal*, *témpest*, &c. as well as *mortál*, *tempést*, &c.

4. LATIN OF THE FOURTH PERIOD : introduced by the Revival of Learning.

39. The large number of French words brought into the language by the Norman invasion, prepared the way for the introduction of fresh Latin words, through the impetus given to learning and literature by the revival of learning in England at the beginning of the sixteenth century.

There are then *two* distinct classes of Latin words in English. (1) Those that have come indirectly from Latin through French. (2) Those that have come directly from the Latin.

Words of the first class have undergone much change in spelling, and their origin is often obscured ; those of the second class have suffered but little alteration, and their origin is easily recognised.

Latin.	Words coming from Latin through Norman-French.	Words coming directly from the Latin.
captivum	caitiff	captive
dilatare	delay	dilate
factum	feat	fact
fragilem	frail	fragile
hospitale	hotel	hospital
lectionem	lesson	lection
pungentem	poignant	pungent
regalem	royal	regal
securum	sure	secure
separare	sever	separate

40. Under the influence of learning, many words coming indirectly from the Latin have taken a more classical form, as, *assaute, dette, defaut, aventure, vitaille,* have been altered to *assault, debt, default, adventure, victual,* &c.

41. The influx of Latin and Greek words, by means of learning and education, lasted from the time of Henry VII. to the end of the reign of Charles II. Many Latin words when first introduced into our language altered their termination, as, *splendidious, mulierosity,* but others were adopted in their original form, as, *chylus* = chyle ; *classis* = class ; *precipitium* = precipice ; *mummia* = mummy ; so too with Greek words, *parallelon* = parallel ; *ecstasis* = ecstasy ; *epocha* = epoch.

As the origin of these loans was well known, we can understand why *compact, convict,* &c. came into use before *compacted* and *convicted* as passive participles.

· **42.** A great number of classical words found their way into the written language which never passed into general usage, as, *intenervate*, to soften; *deturpated*, deformed (Jeremy Taylor); *ludibundness, sanguinolency* (Henry More), &c.

During the reigns of Elizabeth, James, and Charles I. fine writing and speaking were greatly affected; but fortunately many true lovers of their noble mother-tongue raised a cry against the pedantic use of scholastic or *ink-horn* terms as they were then called, and thereby did something to stop the tendency to inundate the language with long and useless words.

Thomas Wilson writing in 1553 says, "Among other lessons this should first be learned, that we never affect any strange ink-horn terms, but to speak as is commonly received; neither seeking to be over fine, nor yet living over careless; using our speech as most men do, and ordering our wits as the fewest have done. Some seek so far for outlandish English, that they forget altogether their mother's language, and I dare swear this, if some of their mothers were alive they were not able to tell what they say, and yet these fine English clerks will say they speak in their mother tongue, if a man should charge them with counterfeiting the king's English." Gill in his *Logonomia Anglica*, published in 1619, thus notices what he calls the "new mange in our speaking and writing." "O harsh lips, I now hear all around me such words as *common, vices, envy, malice;* even *virtue, study, justice, pity, mercy, compassion, profit, commodity, colour, grace, favour, acceptance.* But whither, I pray, in all the world have you banished those words which our forefathers used for these new-fangled ones? Are o·

words to be exiled like our citizens? Is the new
barbaric invasion to extirpate the English tongue? O
ye Englishmen, on you, I say, I call, in whose veins
that blood flows, retain, retain, what yet remains of
our native speech, and, whatever vestiges of our fore-
fathers are yet to be seen, on these plant your foot-
steps." Butler (" Hudibras," I. i. 91) speaks of :—

> " A Babylonish dialect,
> Which learned pedants much affect :
> 'Twas English cut on Greek or Latin,
> Like fustian heretofore on satin."

43. There are a few miscellaneous Romance words
that have come into the language chiefly during the
Tudor and Stuart periods.

(1) **Spanish terms.**—" During the latter half of
the sixteenth century, and the first half of the seven-
teenth century," the Spanish language "was very widely
known in England, indeed far more familiar than it ever
since has been.

" The wars in the Low Countries, the probabili-
ties at one period of a match with Spain, the fact that
Spanish was almost as serviceable at Brussels, at Milan,
at Naples, and for a time at Vienna, not to speak of
Lima and Mexico, as at Madrid itself, and scarcely
less indispensable ; the many points of contact, friendly
and hostile, of England with Spain for well nigh a
century—all this had conduced to an extended know-
ledge of Spanish in England. It was popular at
Court ; Queen Mary and Queen Elizabeth were both
excellent Spanish scholars. . . . . . The statesman
and scholars of the time were rarely ignorant of the
language."—TRENCH.

Many Spanish words end in -ado, -ade, -dor, -illo, -oon : as *armada, barricade, bravado, desperado, eldorado, grenade, parade, tornado, corridor, matador, battledor, armadillo, flotilla, peccadillo, punctilio* (originally *puntillo*), *vanilla, maroon, picaroon, paragon.* Other familiar terms are *alligator* (el-lagarto),[1] *buffalo, cannibal, cargo, cigar, cochineal, crusade, don, duenna, filibuster, gala, garotte, indigo, mulatto, negro, parasol,* &c.

(2) **Portuguese.**—*Caste, fetishism, palaver, porcelain, moidore,* &c.

(3) **Italian.**—In the time of Chaucer, Italian exercised an important influence upon our literature, but scarcely any upon the language. During the reigns of Henry VIII., Mary, and Elizabeth, Italian was as necessary and familiar to every courtier as French is now-a-days. Numerous Italian works were translated into English and Italian peculiarities of speech were copied by English speakers and writers who wished to be thought in fashion. The writings of Surrey, Wyatt, Spenser, and Milton, show an intimate acquaintance with Italian literature. To Italian we are indebted for the following words : *ambuscade, balustrade, bagatelle, balcony, bandit, bravo, broccoli, buffoon, burlesque, bust, cadence, canto, caricature, cartoon, charlatan, citadel, concert, ditto, folio, gazette, grotto, harlequin, lava, madrigal, masquerade, motto, moustache, opera, parapet, pedant, proviso, regatta, rocket, ruffian, serenade, sketch, sovereign, stanza, stiletto, umbrella, volcano,* &c.

(4) **Modern French.**—Some few were introduced during the reign of Charles II., as *chagrin,* good

---

[1] Lat. lacerta = lizard.

graces, grimace, repartee.   Many others have come
into the language at a still later period : *accoucheur,
début, depôt, déjcuner, élite, goût, programme, soirée,
précis,* &c.

44. A few words are borrowed from other **Teu-
tonic** tongues :—

(1) **Dutch.**—Mostly nautical terms, as *boom, hoy,
sloop, schooner, skipper, yacht,* &c.

(2) **German.**—(i) Names of metals, *cobalt, nickel,
zinc,* &c. ; (ii) *loafer, iceberg, plunder ;* (iii) some few
terms are formed after a German model, *father-land,
folk-lore, fuller's earth, hand-book, one-sided, pipe-clay,
stand-point,* &c.

45. We have naturalized miscellaneous words from
various sources .—

(1) **Hindu.**—*Calico, chintz, muslin, loot, jungle,
pundit, rice, durbar,* &c.

(2) **Persian.**—*Chess, lilac, orange, sash, turban,* &c.

(3) **Hebrew.**—*Abbot, amen, cabal, cherub, jubilee,
pharisaical, sabbath, shibboleth.*

(4) **Arabic.**—*Admiral, alchemy, alcohol, almanac,
arsenal, assassin, bazaar, chemistry, cipher, gazelle,
giraffe, shrub, syrup, sofa, talisman, tariff, zenith,
zero,* &c.

(5) **Turkish.**—*Bey, chouse, scimitar,* &c.

(6) **Malay.**—(Run) *amuck, bamboo, bantam, orang-
utang, sago,* &c.

(7) **Chinese.**—*Caddy, nankeen, satin, tea, man-
durin,* &c.

(8) **American.**—*Canoe, cocoa, hammock, maize, to-
bacco, tomahawk, wigwam, yam.*

Preponderance of the Native over the Foreign Element.

46. The total number of words in a complete English dictionary would be about 100,000. Numerically the words of Classical origin are about twice as many as pure English terms. The best writers, however, use less than a tenth of the total number; while in ordinary conversation, our vocabulary contains from three to five thousand words.

Recollecting that all our most familiar terms are unborrowed, and that in an ordinary page of English, pure native words are used about five times as often as one foreign term, we can have no difficulty in seeing that the pure English element greatly preponderates over the foreign element.

English is a mixed language only in regard to its vocabulary; its grammar is neither borrowed nor mixed. We cannot, therefore, speak of English as a Romance tongue; the construction and meaning of sentences depend upon the use of our grammatical inflexions, and as these are of native origin they serve still more to make the English element the essential and most important part of our language.

47. Pure English elements are :—

(1) Grammatical inflexions.

a. Plural suffixes of nouns (*-s,-n*) : possessive case (*-s*).

b. Suffixes marking comparison of adjectives *(-er, -est)*.

c. Verbal inflexions marking persons (*-st, -th, -s*); tense (*-d, -t*); endings of participles (*-en, -ing*).

d. Auxiliary words used in place of inflexions:—

i. Words used for comparing of adjectives (*more* and *most*).

ii. Auxiliary verbs (*be, am, have, shall, will*).

(2) Grammatical words.

a. All numerals: *one, two,* &c., except *second, million, billion.*

b. Demonstratives: *the, this, that,* &c.

c. Pronouns (personal, relative, &c.): *I, thou, he, who,* &c.

d. Many adverbs of time and place : *here, there, when,* &c.

e. Most prepositions and conjunctions.

f. All nouns forming their plural by vowel change.

g. All adjectives of irregular comparison.

h. All verbs forming their past tense by change of vowel.

i. All anomalous verbs.

j. Causative verbs, formed from intransitive verbs by vowel change.

(3) i. Numerous suffixes of—

a. **Nouns,** *-hood, -ship, -dom, -ness, -ing, -th* (*-t*), &c.

b. **Adjectives,** *-ful, -ly, -en, -ish, -some,* &c.

c. **Verbs,** *-en, -le, -er.*

ii. Numerous prefixes.

a. *be, for, ful, over, out,* &c.

(4). Most monosyllabic words.

5. The names of most striking objects and agencies in nature as the heavenly bodies, *sky, heaven, sun, moon, stars:* the elements, *fire, earth, water,* and their natural changes, *thunder, lightning, hail, snow, rain, wind, storm, light, heat, darkness,* &c. ; the seasons, *spring, summer, winter;* [1] the natural divisions of time, *day, night, morning, evening, twilight, sunset, sunrise,* &c. ; natural features, external scenery, *height, hill, dale, dell, sea, stream, flood, spring, well, island, land, wood, tree,* &c. ; words used in earliest childhood, *father, mother, sister, brother, son, daughter, child, home, kin, friend, house, roof, hearth;* parts of the house and household furniture, *room, wall, yard, floor, stair, gate, stool, bed, bench, loom, spoon, cup, kettle,* &c. ; food and clothing, *cloth, skirt, coat, shoe, hat,* &c. ; *bread, loaf, milk, cake, ale, wine, beer;* agricultural terms, *plough, rake, harrow, scythe, barn, flail, sheaf, yoke,* &c. ; the ordinary terms of traffic, *trade, business, cheap, dear, sell, buy, baker, miller, smith, tanner, bookseller,* &c. ; names of trees and plants, *ash, beech, birch, oak, apple, corn, wheat,* &c. ; quadrupeds, *deer, sheep, sow, swine, cow, horse, goat, fox, dog, hound,* &c. ; birds, *hawk, raven, rook, crow, swan, owl, dove, lark, nightingale, hen, goose, duck, gander, drake,* &c. ; fish, *eel, herring, lobster, otter, whale,* &c. ; insects, *worm, adder, snake, wasp, fly, gnat,* &c. ; parts of the body of man and beast, *flesh, skin, bone, head, limb, hand,* &c. ; *horn, snout,*

---

[1] *Autumn* is Latin.

tail, claw, hoof, &c.; **modes of bodily actions
and posture,** &c., *sit, stand, lean, walk, run, leap,
stagger, wake, sleep, nod, rise, talk,* &c.; **emotions
and passions,** &c., *love, hope, fear, tear, weep,
laugh, smile,* &c.; **common colours,** *white, red,
brown,* &c.

48. To the Romance and Latin elements belong
many words connected with dignitaries, offices, &c. as,
duke, marquis, baron, &c.; government, *state, people,
parliament, treaty, cabinet, minister, army,* &c.; law,
attorney, barrister, damage, felony, &c.; church, *baptism, ceremony, bible, prayer, preach, lesson, creed, evangelist,* &c.; general and abstract terms, *sense, emotion,
passion, colour,* &c.   Latin and Greek words are most
numerous in scientific and philosophical works.

CHAPTER III.

Early English Dialects.

49. From the eleventh to the middle of the four-teenth century there was no standard or classical language. Various forms of English were spoken in different parts of the country, and every work written during this period illustrates some local variety of the English Speech. There were three leading dialects in the fourteenth century; Southern, Midland, and Northern, each distinguished by certain grammatical peculiarities.

Thus in a work written South of the Thames the verb in the plural of the present indicative ends in -eth, as we **habbeth**, we have : a work composed between the Thames and Humber has -**en** instead of -eth, as we **habben.**

A Northern writer in the district between the Humber and the Firth of Forth avoids the use of -**eth** and -**en**, and substitutes -**es** for them, or, as is frequently the case, uses an uninflected form, as we **haves,** or we **have.**

Southern.—"We hopieth for to habbe heuen-riche blisce " : " Ye habbeth iherd thet godspel." (Kentish Sermons, A.D. 1240—50.)

Bote the Flemynges that woneth in the west syde of Wales habbeth yleft here straunge speche, and speketh Saxonlych ynow. (Trevisa, A.D. 1387.)

Midland.—   Thei knelen alle, and with o vois
                The King thei thonken of this chois.
                            (Gower, A.D. 1393.)
We hauen shep, and we hauen swin. (Havelok
the Dane, before 1300.)

Northern. —Tharfor maysters soom tyme uses
the wand that **has** childer to lere under thair hand.
(Hampole, 1340.)

                Thir twa heuens ay obout-rynnes
                Both day and nyght, and neuer blynnes.
                                    (*Ib.*)

Modern English has sprung from the East-Midland Dialect.

50. The Midland dialect between the Thames and
the Humber covered a very large area and had
various local varieties.

The most important of these was the East-Midland
spoken in Lincolnshire, Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex,
which had many words and grammatical forms in
common with the Northern dialects.

As early as the beginning of the thirteenth century
it had thrown off most of the older inflexions (pre-
served by the Southern dialects) and was almost as
flexionless as our own. It had an extensive literature
and numbered among its writers, Ormin, Robert of
Brunne, Wicliffe, Gower and Chaucer. Of all these,
Chaucer was the author whose works were most
popular and widely diffused. Successive writers, as
Hoccleve, Lydgate, and Heywood, took him for their
model, and thus his influence did not die out till
ʼ great change caused by the revival of learning, and

other important circumstances in the reigns of the
Tudors had brought about a new era in the language
and literature.

It was Chaucer's influence then that caused the
East Midland speech to supersede the other dialects
and to assume the position of the standard literary
English, from which has come in a direct line with but
few flexional changes the language spoken and written
by educated Englishmen in all parts of the British
Empire.

50*a*. **Periods of the English Language.—**
A language is said to be dead when it is no longer
spoken. Such a language cannot be altered; but a
living language is always undergoing some change or
other. We do not always take note of it, because it
is so very gradual; but when we compare the writers
of one period with those of another, we have plain
evidence of the fact. The farther we go back in this
comparison the greater the changes appear, and our
language in its earliest period looks very much like a
foreign tongue.

In referring to the earlier periods or stages of
growth through which our language has passed, we
shall distinguish the following divisions :—

(1) **Old English** (A.D. 450—1100).—The language
of this period is inflexional. Its vocabulary contains
few or no foreign elements. Its poetry is alliterative.
To this period belong the writings of *Cædmon, Alfred,*
and *Ælfric.*

(2) **Early English** (A.D. 1100—1250). — The
language in this period shows many changes both in
orthography and grammar. In the first part of this

D

period the modifications were chiefly orthographical, but they affected the endings of words, and thus led the way to the grammatical changes which took place in the latter part of the thirteenth century.

To the earlier part of this period belong the following works: the *Brut*, written by *Layamon;* the *Ormulum*, by *Ormin;* the *Ancren Riwle*, &c. To the latter half belong the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, the *Owl and Nightingale*, &c.

(3) **Middle English** (A.D. 1250—1485).—Most of the older inflexions of nouns and adjectives have now disappeared. The verbal inflexions are much altered, and many strong verbs have been replaced by weak ones. To the first half of this period belong a *Metrical Chronicle*, and *Lives of Saints*, attributed to Robert of Gloucester; Langtoft's *Metrical Chronicle*, translated by *Robert of Brunne*, and the *Handlyng Synne*, by the same writer; the *Pricke of Conscience*, by Hampole; the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, by Dan Michel of Northgate, Kent. To the second half belong the works of *Wicliffe*, *William Langley* (or *Langland*), *Gower*, and *Chaucer*, &c.

(4) **Modern English**, from A.D. 1485 to the present time. We might subdivide this period into two parts, calling the language in the earlier period from 1485 to 1600 Tudor English.

CHAPTER IV.

Sounds and Letters.

(1) LETTERS.

51. Letters are conventional signs employed to represent sounds. They have grown out of the old pictorial mode of writing, and were at first abbreviated pictures.[1]

In the oldest alphabets, a letter does not represent an indivisible sound (consonant *or* vowel), but a syllable (consonant *and* vowel).

After a time the consonants were looked upon as the most important part, and consequently they alone were written, or written in full, while the vowel was either omitted or represented by some less conspicuous symbol.

Such was the character of the old Phœnician alphabet, from which have come the Hebrew, Syriac, Arabic, Sanskrit, and Greek alphabets.

The **Latin** alphabet, derived from one of the older forms of the Greek, is the parent of our own symbols.

---

[1] Cp. the names of the letters in Hebrew and Greek, *b* = *beth* (house), *Beta* : *g* = *gimel* (camel), *Gamma* ; *d* = *daleth* (door), *Delta.*

The oldest English alphabet consisted of twenty-four [1] letters, all except three being Roman characters : Þ, (*thorn* = *th*); and ƿ (*wên* = *w*), are Runic letters; Ð, ð is merely a crossed *d* used instead of the *thorn.* j is another form of i, and v of u.   w is a doubling of u.

(2) SOUNDS.

52. The spoken alphabet is composed of sounds produced by the articulating organs (or organs of speech), *throat, tongue, palate, lips,* &c., which serve to modify the breath as it issues from the larynx.

There are two great divisions of Sounds :

Vowels and Consonants.

The **Vowels** are the open sounds of a language. In a vowel sound the emission of the breath is modified by the organs of speech, but is not interrupted or stopped by the actual contact of any of these organs. In the Indo-European speech there were only three original short vowels **a, i, u** (*far, bit, full*), from which have sprung the long vowels **a** (*father*), i (*machine*), u (*fool*).

The dipthongs are formed in passing from one vowel sound to another : the oldest are **e** = **a** + i (*fête*), **o** = **a** + **u** (*note*). All the varieties of vowel sounds,

---

[1] See Whitney, "Language and the study of Language," p. 465 (1867).

(and they may be almost infinite) are modifications of the three original vowels (**a, i, u.**)

The **Consonants** are closer sounds than the vowels and less musical. They are produced by the contact of one or other of the organs of speech, whereby the stream of breath is wholly or partially stopped. In the oldest Indo-European speech there were only twelve consonant sounds, **b, p, d, t, g, k, s, m, n, l, r**; and **h** in combination with **b, d, g,** forming the aspirates **bh, dh, gh** (cp. Gr. φ, θ, χ).

53. Class.fication of Consonants.—The consonants can be arranged according to the organ by which they are sounded : **Guttural** (*g, k*): **Dental** (*d, t, th*), **Labial** (*b, p, v, f,*) &c. They can also be classified according as the breath is wholly or partially stopped in its exit. Stopped sounds are called **mutes** or **checks**, as **g, k, d, t, b, p.**

In the sounds **m, n, ng**, the breath passes through the nose, and they are called **nasals.**

Partially stopped sounds are termed **Spirants, as, h, th, f, s, z, &c.** ; l and r are called **Trills.**

54. In comparing **b** and **p** &c., **d** and **t** &c., we shall find that **b** and **d** are pronounced with less effort than **p** and **t** ; hence **b** and **d**, &c. are said to be **soft** or **flat**, while **p** and **t**, &c. are called **hard or sharp** consonants.

55. TABLE OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

	MUTES.			SPIRANTS.		
	Flat.	Sharp.	Nasal.	Flat.	Sharp.	Trilled.
Gutturals .	G	K	NG		Ch (loch) H	
Palatals .	J	Ch			Y (yea)	
Palatal Sibilants				Zh (azure)	Sh (sure)	R
Dental Sibilants				Z (prize, rise)	S (mouse)	L
Dentals .	D	T	N	Dh (bathe)	Th (bath)	
Labials . .	B	P	M	V W (witch)	F Hw (which)	

56. Ch and j (in English) are compounds : **ch** = *t* + *sh* (sure); **j** = *d* + *zh* (azure).

Zh and sh are connected with the *palatals*, while z and s are allied to the dental, or lingual series of sounds.

57. From this table of consonants we have omitted

(1) **c** ; because it can be represented by **k** before **a, o, u,** and by **s** (in *rice*) before **e, i, y.**

(2) **q** ; because it is equivalent to **kw.**

(3) **x** ; because it is a compound of **ks**, as in *fox.*

Number of Elementary Sounds in the English spoken Alphabet.

58. In addition to the twenty-four consonants contained in the above table, we have fourteen vowels and five diphthongs, making altogether **forty-three** sounds.

I.—Consonants.

1.	*b.*	9.	*m.*	17.	*y.*
2.	*d.*	10.	*n.*	18.	*z.*
3.	*f.*	11.	*p.*	19.	*ch.*
4.	*g.*	12.	*r.*	20.	*dh* (bathe).
5.	*h.*	13.	*s.*	21.	*th* (bath).
6.	*j.*	14.	*t.*	22.	*zh* (azure).
7.	*k.*	15.	*v.*	23.	*sh* (sure).
8.	*l.*	16.	*w.*	24.	*hw* (what).

II.—Vowels.

25.	*a* in gnat.	32.	*e* in meet.
26.	*a* in pair, ware.	33.	*i* in knit.
27.	*a* fame.	34.	*o* in not.
28.	*a* father.	35.	*o* in note.
29.	*a* all.	36.	*oo* in fool, rude.
30.	*a* want.	37.	*oo* in wood, put.
31.	*e* in met.	38.	*u* in nut.

III.—Diphthongs.

39.	*i* in high.
40.	*i* in aye.
41.	*oi* in boil.
42.	*ow* in how bound.
43.	*ew* in mew.

Imperfections of the English Alphabet.

59. A perfect alphabet must be based upon phonetic principles, and (1) every simple sound must be represented by a distinct symbol ; (2) no sound must be represented by more than one sign.

a. The spoken alphabet contains forty-three sounds, but the *written* alphabet has only twenty-six letters or symbols to represent them ; therefore in the first point necessary to a perfect system of orthography the English alphabet is found wanting.

The alphabet, as we have seen, is *redundant*, containing three superfluous letters, *c*, *q*, *x*, so that it contains only twenty-three letters wherewith to represent forty-three sounds.   Again, the five vowels, *a, e, i, o, u,* have to represent thirteen sounds (see § 58).   It is thus both imperfect and redundant.

The same combinations of letters, too, have distinct sounds, as *ough* in bough, borough, cough, chough, hough, hiccough, though, trough, through, Sc. sough ; *ea* in beat, bear, heard, &c.

b. In regard to the second point, that no sound should be represented by more than one sign, we again find that the English alphabet fails.   The letter *ō* (in *note*) may be represented by *oa* (boat), *oe* (toe), *eo* (yeoman), *ou* (soul), *ow* (sow), *ew* (sew), *au* (hautboy), *eau* (beau), *owe* (owe), *oo* (floor), *oh* (oh !). The alphabet is therefore *inconsistent* as well as *imperfect.*

Many letters are silent as in *psalm, calf, could, gnat, know,* &c.

c. The English alphabet is supplemented by a umber of double letters called *digraphs (oa. oo,* &c.)

which are as inconsistently employed as the simple characters themselves.

d. Other expedients for remedying the defects of the alphabet are recognised—

(1) The use of a final *e* to denote a long vowel, as *bite, note,* &c.[1] But even with regard to this *e* the orthography is not consistent; it will not allow a word to end in *v,* although the preceding vowel is short, hence an *e* is retained in *live, give,* &c.

(2) The doubling of consonants to indicate a short vowel, as *folly, hotter,* &c.[2]

It must be recollected that the letters *a, e, i, o, u,* were originally devised and intended to represent the vowel sounds heard in *father, prey, pique, pole, rule,* respectively. In other languages that employ them they still have this value.

During the written period of our language the pronunciation of the vowels has undergone great and extensive changes at different periods, while the spelling has not kept pace with these changes, so that there has arisen a great dislocation of our orthographical system, a divorcement of our written from our spoken alphabet. The introduction of foreign elements into the English language during its written period has brought into use different, and often discordant, systems of orthography (cp. *ch* in *church, chivalry, Christian,* &c.). In addition to this there are peculiarities arising out of the orthographical usages of the Old-English dialects.

---

[1] This came about because the final *e* was kept in writing after the sound was dropped. The *i* in *bite* was long while the word was dissyllabic.

[2] This arose through the short vowel causing the doubling of the consonant.

CHAPTER V.

Permutation or Interchange of Sounds.

60. The sounds of a language are liable to certain changes.

One sound often passes into another.

(1) The vowels are subject to almost infinite variations : thus, short **a**, as in *gnat*, has kept its place in *land, band,* &c., but has become **ai** in *name*, and **o** in *swan*, and **ou** in *bound* (O.E. *band*), &c. Long **a** has passed into **ô** in *home* (= hâm), *bone* (= bân), &c. Long **i** (as in *machine*), has become **i** in *bite, drive,* &c. Long **u** (as in *pool*) has become **ou**, as in *house* (= hûs).

(2) The consonants also pass into one another, and the laws governing these changes may be arranged under the following heads.

i. All sounds uttered by the same organ are interchangeable, as **b** and **p**, &c., **d** and **t**, &c. To ascertain these, read *across* the table in sect. 55.

ii. Sounds belonging to the same series though uttered by different organs, are interchangeable. Thus, the spirants **f** and **th** ; **th** and **s** ; **l** and **r**,

&c., often interchange. Read the columns *down-wards* in section 55.

iii. Combination of consonants leads to assimilation of the one to the other, as *gospel* = *gos-spel* = O.E. *godspel; ditto* = Latin *dictum.*

61. Sounds belonging to the same organ interchange.—The most common change of sounds belonging to the same organ is the passing of a sharp into its corresponding flat mute, or *vice versâ.* Pass from col. 1 to col. 2 in section 55. Sometimes the mutes and the aspirates of the same organ inter-change.

Labials.—B has become p in *gossip* = O.E. *godsib.* P has become b in *cobweb* = M.E. *copweb.* F has become v in *vixen* = *fixen* from *fox; vat* = *fat.* Cp. *wife* and *wives.* B and p change to v, as in *have* = O.E. *habban; knave* = O.E. *cnapa.* B and v sometimes pass into their corresponding nasal m, *summerset* = Fr. *soubresaut; malmsey* = O.Fr. *malvoisie;* M changes to b in *marble,* = Lat. *marmor.*

Dentals.—D becomes t in *clot* = *clod; abbot* = O.E. *abbod.* T passes into d in *card* = *chart,* Fr. *carte,* Lat. *charta; pedigree* = T.E. *petigree.* D and t be-come th in *father, mother,* O.E. *fader, moder; author* = O.E. *autour,* Lat. *auctor.* Th has become d in *could* = O.E. *cuthe; bedlam* = *Bethlehem;* it passes into t in *nostril* = O.E. *nas-thyrlu* = M.E. *nos-thirles.*

Gutturals.—K has become g in *wig* = *periwig* = *peruque; goblet* = Fr. *gobelet* = M.Lat. *cupelletum.*

Palatals.—Ch and j interchange in *jaw* = *chaw; a-jar* = *a-char.*

62. Sounds belonging to the same series interchange :—

i. The Spirants interchange with one another, **F = th**. Children often say *fumb* for *thumb*. Cp. *dwarf*, M.E. *dwerth* and *dwerg* = O.E. *thweorh;* Russian *Fedor* = *Theodore*. **F** often represents an older **h** or **gh**, as *cough*, *laugh*, &c. **Th** becomes **s** as *loves* = *loveth*. **S** between two vowels often becomes an **r** instead of **z**. Cp. *are* = *ase*, *were* = *wese*. Cp. *forlorn* = *forlosen; frore* (Milton) = *frozen;* *varlet* = M. Lat. *vassaletus*.

ii. **Trills.**—**L** and **r** very frequently pass into one another, as *marble* = Fr. *marbre*, Lat. *marmor; palfrey* = Fr. *palefroi* = Lat. *paraveredus; slander* = Fr. *esclandre* = Lat. *scandalum; chapter* = Fr. *chapitre* = Lat. *capitulum*.

iii. **Gutturals and Palatals.**—**K** has become **ch**, as *chin*, *child* = O.E. *cin*, *cild; ditch* and *which* = O.E. *dic* and *hwilc*. **G** has become **j** in *singe* = O.E. *besengan; bridge* = O.E. *brycg*, M.E. *brigge*. Cp. *joy* = Fr. *jouir*, Lat. *gaudere*.

63. Combination of Consonants causes assimilation. When two consonants come together the first is made like the second, or the second like the first. Cp. *best* = *bes-st* = *bet-st; ad-vise* with *at-tend*, and *absorb* with *absorption*. The above examples show us that we cannot keep every combination of sounds. Thus, we may write *cupboard*, but we must pronounce it *cubboard*.

The general law for the combination of consonant

· sounds is, that a flat sound must be followed by a flat sound, and a sharp by a sharp sound.

This has an important bearing in English upon (1) the plural of nouns, (2) the possessive case of nouns, (3) the third person singular of verbs, (4) the past tense and passive participle of verbs.

Flat + *Flat.*

(1) *Slabs = slabz; lads = ladz; wives = wivz.*

(2) *Dog's = dog'z.*

(3) *Wags = wagz; stabs = stabz; bathes = bathez.*

(4) *Dubbed = dubd; hugged = hugd.*

Sharp + *Sharp.*

(1) *Slaps, mats, reefs.*

(2) *Cat's, bank's.*

(3) *Reaps, fasts.*

(4) *Weeped* has become *wept; lacked = lackt.*

64. Some sounds are more difficult to pronounce than others. Difficult sounds, as gutturals, often pass into easier sounds as spirants, or into mere breathings; sometimes they disappear altogether. This explains—

(1) The loss of gutturals at the end of words, as *godly* = O.E. *godlic; I* = O.E. *Ic; day* = O.E. *dæg,* &c.

(2) The silent letters in *through, though, high,* &c.

(3) The *f* sound in *laugh, cough,* &c.

(4) The *y* sound in *year,* O.E. *ger.*

(5) The *ow* in *tallow,* M.E. *talgh.*

65. The pronunciation of one sound is rendered easier by an additional one. Thus, **m** often becomes **mb** or **mp**, and **n** changes to **nd** or **nt**. Also **s** becomes **st**.

(**B** and **p** come in after **m**, because they are Labials, and **d**, **t** after **n**, because they are Dentals.)

(1) *Slumber* = O.E. *slumerian; nimble* = O.E. *nimol; number* = Lat. *numerus; empty* = O.E. *emtig; tempt* = Lat. *tentare.*

(2) *Thunder* = O.E. *thunor; hind* = O.E. *hine; tender* = Lat. *tener; ancient* = O.Fr. *ancien; tyrant* = Fr. *tiran.*

(3) *Amongst* = M.E. *amonges; whilst* = M.E. *whiles,* &c.

66. Occasionally certain combinations of sounds become difficult, and one of the sounds is dropped. Thus, -nf, -nth, and -ns, have become -f, -th, and -s. Cp. *soft* with Germ. *sanft; tooth* with Goth. *tunthus,* Germ. *zahn; goose* (O.E. *gôs*) with Germ. *gans.*

GRIMM'S LAW OF PERMUTATION OF CONSONANTS.

67. We have seen that one sound may pass into another, and also that one sound is often preferred to another, especially by children in learning to speak, who say *nuffink* for *nothing,* and *poot* for *foot,* &c.

Dialects are often distinguished by their preference for particular sounds. In the south-west of England **v** and **z** are used instead of **f** and **s**, as *vinger* (finger), *zing* (sing). Languages of the same class exhibit a

similar partiality; thus, where we have d and th the Germans employ th (= t) and d. Cp. *deer* = Ger. *thier* = O.H.Ger. *tier; thorn* = Ger. *dorn.*

This substitution of one sound for another extends to all the languages of the Indo-European family, and for the most part follows the rules already laid down for the Permutation of Sounds. (1) All sounds pronounced by the same organ are interchangeable; (2) All sounds of the same series are liable to pass into one another. We can read table in sect. 55 across or downwards.

The collection of rules by which we can at once tell what sounds in one language correspond to those of its kindred tongues, is called GRIMM's LAW.

To render the law as simple as possible, we must bear in mind, (1) the three-fold division of sounds into **Aspirate, Flat,** and **Sharp,** according to the following arrangement :—

Names.	Aspirate.	Flat or Soft.	Sharp or Hard.
Labial . . .	f	b	p
Dental . . .	th	d	t
Guttural . . .	h	g	k (c)

(2) the classification of the Indo-European languages into three groups.

     I. **Classical** (Greek, Latin, Sanskrit, &c.)

    II. **Low-German** (English, &c.)

   III. **High-German.**

(1) Grimm's Law shows us that an **Aspirate** in I. the *Classical* Languages is represented by a **flat** in II. *Low-German*, and by a **sharp** in III. *High-German*.

(2) A **Flat** mute in I. corresponds to a **sharp** in II. and an **aspirate** in III.

(3) A **Sharp** consonant in I. corresponds to an **aspirate** in II. and a **flat** in III.

I.	Classical . .	Aspirate	Flat	Sharp
II.	Low German	Flat	Sharp	Aspirate
III.	High German	Sharp	Aspirate	Flat

ILLUSTRATIONS.

I.

Mnemonic[1] ASH	Classical.	Low German.	O.H.German.
	Aspirate.	Soft *or* Flat.	Hard *or* Sharp
Labials . . .	*f*rater	*b*rother	*p*ruoder
Dentals . . .	θυγατηρ	*d*aughter	*t*ohtar Ger. *t*ochter
Gutturals . .	χήν, anser (= hanser)	*g*oose	*k*ans

[1] If it be remembered that *Soft = Flat*, and *Hard = Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word ASH, with its varying forms SHA or HAS, according to the sound which is to come first.

II.

Mnemonic [1] SHA	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German.
	Soft *or* Flat.	Hard *or* Sharp.	Aspirate.
Labials .	κάννα *:s*	hem*p*	hana*f* (Ger. han*f*)
Dentals .	*d*omare, *d*uo	*t*ame, *t*wo	*s*ëman, *s*vei (Ger. *s*wei)
Gutturals .	e*g*o, *g*enu	O.E. I*c*, *k*nee	I*h*, (Ger. ic*h*)

III.

Mnemonic [1] HAS	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German.
	Hard *or* Sharp	Aspirate.	Soft *or* Flat.
Labials .	*p*ater	*f*ather	*v*atar (Ger *v*ater.)
Dentals .	*t*u, *t*res	*th*ou, *th*ree	*d*u, *d*ri (Ger. drei)
Gutturals .	so*c*er o*c*to *c*aput	sweor (= sweo*h*r) ei*gh*t *h*ead (O. E. *h*eafod)	Ger. schwa*g*er Ger. a*ch*t (irreg.) *h*oupit (Ger.*h*aupt)

SUPPRESSION, ADDITION, AND TRANSPOSITION OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

68.   There are other changes of letters that demand a slight notice.   Sounds are (1) dropped, (2) added, (3) transposed.

---

[1] If it be remembered that *Soft = Flat*, and *Hard = Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word ASH, with its varying forms SHA or HAS, according to the sound which is to come first.

(1) Dropping of Letters.

Sounds fall away from—

I. the beginning of a word (*Aphæresis*).

II. the end of a word (*Apocope*).

III. the body of a word, causing coalescence of two sounds (*Syncope*).

Accent plays an important part in these changes, unaccented syllables are much weaker than accented ones, and are thus more liable to drop off.

I. APHÆRESIS.

reeve	=	O.E. ge-refa.
sport	=	E.E. disport.
bishop	=	Lat. episcopus.
diamond	=	Fr. diamant, Lat. adamans.

II. APOCOPE.

before	=	O.E. beforan.
riddle	=	O.E. ræd-els.
riches	=	E.E. richesse.
maugre	=	Lat. male-gratum.
pork	—	Fr. porc, Lat. porcus.

III. SYNCOPE.

brain	=	O.E. brægen.
head	=	O.E. heafod.
sexton	=	sacristan.
palsy	=	paralysis.
caitiff	=	Fr. chétif, Lat. captivus.
cruel	=	Lat. crudelis.
pray	=	Fr. prier, Lat. precari.
church	=	O.E. cyrice.
mint	=	O.E. mynet, Lat. moneta.
bounty	=	Fr. bonté, Lat. bonitatem.
clergy	=	Fr. clergé, Lat. clericatus.

(2) Addition of Letters.

Letters may be added to the primitive form
I. at the beginning of a word (*Prothesis*).
II. at the end of a word (*Epithesis*).
III. in the body of a word (*Epenthesis*).

I. PROTHESIS.

h, haughty, Lat. altus, Fr. haut.
n (from the indef. article), newt (= an ewt); nouch
(= an ouch).
s, scramble, scratch, squeeze.

II. EPITHESIS.

d (after an originally final ĕ), wicked, wretched.
d (after the letter n), sound. *See* § 65, p. 46.
h (after s), push, nourish.
t (after n). *See* § 65, p. 46.
t (after s). *See* § 65, p. 46.

III. EPENTHESIS.

b (after m). *See* § 65, p. 46.
p (after m). *See* § 65, p. 46.
d (after l), alder (-liefest), M.E. *aller*, *i.e.* of all.
n (before t), lantern (Lat. *laterna*).
n (before g), messenger, passenger.
r, groom, hoarse, culprit.
Some letters are merely orthographical blunders,
having crept in through a false etymology or analogy.
l in could because of *should, would*.
h in lanthorn from a supposed connection with
horn; and in rhyme from a supposed connection
with *rhythm.*

E 2

th in farther (because confused with *further*).

s in island (as if derived from *isle*).

w in whole and its derivatives.

x in pickaxe (as if connected with *axe*.   Cp. M.E. *picoys*).

(3) Metathesis, or Transposition of Letters.

r third for *thrid* (cp. three), nostrils (for *nosthirls*), cp. trouble with *dis-turb*.

ps becomes **sp**, clasped (= M.E. *clapsed*), wasp (= O.E. *wæps*).

sc becomes **cs** or **x**, hoax (O.E. *husc*), cp. O.E. *ascian*, M.E. axe for *ask*.

CHAPTER VI.

Etymology.

69. Etymology treats of the classification, structure, and history of words; its chief divisions are inflexion and derivation.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

70. Words are arranged in classes, according to the functions they perform in a sentence; these classes are called the Parts of Speech.[1]

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\textit{Declinable} & \left\{ \begin{array}{l}
\text{1. Noun.} \\
\text{2. Adjective.} \\
\text{3. Pronoun.} \\
\text{4. Verb.}
\end{array} \right. \\[2em]
\textit{Indeclinable} & \left\{ \begin{array}{l}
\text{5. Adverb.} \\
\text{6. Preposition.} \\
\text{7. Conjunction.} \\
\text{8. Interjection.}
\end{array} \right.
\end{array}
$$

INFLEXION AND DERIVATION.

71. The changes which words undergo to mark case, gender, number, comparison, tense, person, &c., are called *inflexions*.

---

[1] Speech here means language.

The inflexion of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *declension;* when applied to verbs, it is called *conjugation.*

A *root* or *radical* is that part of a word which cannot be reduced to a simpler or more original form.

According to their origin, roots are either *predicative,* as *horse, white, write,* &c.; or *demonstrative,* as *he, the,* &c.

When the root is modified by a suffix, it is called a *derivative;* thus *wil-ful, good-ly, tru-th,* are derived respectively from *will, good,* and *true.*

Derivates may be native or foreign, as *know-ledge* (English), *sci-ence* (Latin). *Cognates* must be carefully distinguished from *derived* words : thus *father* is cognate with the Latin *pater .* but *paternal* is derived from *pater.*

Two cognate forms of the same class may exist side by side ; *from* (English), and *fro* (Scandinavian).

When a derivative or compound consists of elements belonging to different languages, it is called a hybrid, as *shepherd-ess* (English + Romance), *socialism,* (Latin + Greek).

A word containing two roots is called a *compound,* as *shep-herd, fore-man, break-fast,* &c.

Prefixes like *be, fore, with,* &c., are compounded with verbs as *be-speak, fore-tell, with-stand,* &c.

Compounds like *won't, nill,* (will not) are called agglutinative compounds. This term might be applied to all compounds, in which the elements are intimately fused ; as *none, naught, fortnight, gospel,* &c.

72. Suffixes of inflexion and derivation are called *formative* elements.

All Suffixes are shortened forms of predicative or demonstrative roots.

The first step towards inflexion is *collocation,* just as

good-like has given us *goodly*. *See* Suffixes of Predica-
tive origin.

The suffix *-s* in Gothic *hund-s*, Lat. *cani-s*, which marks
the nominative case, is nothing more than a shortened form of
the old demonstrative pronoun, *sa*, O.E. *se*, the, that.

Thus *vox* = *voc-s*, the calling, the voice; *rex* = *reg-s*, the
ruling one, the king.

The ending *-th* in the third person sing. of verbs, as *love-th*,
is another form of our demonstrative *the, tha-t*.

73. That which was not originally an inflexion often
by usage becomes one. Thus the vowel change in
the plural of nouns, and in the past tense of strong
verbs was not originally an inflexion.

In *feet, teeth*, &c., a vowel and a plural suffix (*s*) have
been lost from a very early period. *See* Plurals of
Nouns by Vowel change.

The vowel change in *held, fell*, &c. is due to an
original reduplication. *See* Strong Verbs.

The addition of a syllable causes a change in the root-vowel
Cp. *nátion*, and *nátional: fore*, and *forehead: break*, and
breakfast.

The loss of an internal letter causes the lengthening of a
vowel, as *right* (pronounced *ríte*) was originally *ríht*. Cp. *ewt*
from *evet, lord* from *hlaford*.

The suffix *-n* in ox-*en* was not originally a sign of
the plural, but was added to the root, before the
addition of the ordinary plural sign *-s*. After a time
the *-s* dropped off leaving the inserted letter *n* to
represent the plural inflexion. Cp. *eaves, alms, riches*,
&c., which are now treated like plurals in *-s*.

The primitive plural of *ox* was not *oxan* but *oxans*. *Chicken*
was once used as a plural, but the *-en* is no plural sign. In
O.E. the plural of *chicken* = *cycen-u* from *cycen*, a *chicken :* after

a time it became *chicken-e,* or *chicken.* Cp. M.E. *lenden* for *lenden-u* or *lenden-e,* loins.

Such nouns as *song, band,* &c. are usually treated as derivatives of the verbs *sing, bind,* &c. This is an erroneous view. The O.E. *sang, band,* show that these words are the roots of which *sing* and *bind* are weakened forms.

74. The same word has sometimes come to have two different forms, with different functions, as *to* and *too; of* and *off: through* and *thorough; one* and *an,* &c.

75. The loss of inflexion is supplied by the use of independent roots. *Case-endings* are replaced by *prepositions; verbal endings* by *auxiliary verbs.* Cp. the use of the prepositions *of* and *to* for the old genitive and dative inflexions : *do, have, shall, will,* &c. in the formation of tenses : *more* and *most* instead of *-er* and *-est* in the comparison of adjectives.

The preposition *to* has replaced the infinitive ending *-an (-en)* as, *drinc-an = to* drink.

76. There is a tendency in all languages to simplify whatever has become complex or obsolete.

Thus the plural suffix *-s* has replaced various others, in *eyes, hands, sisters,* = O.E. *eág-an, hand-a, swustr-u.*

Many strong verbs have conformed to the weak or regular conjugation, as *helped,* O.E. *heolp,* &c. *See* remarks on Gender and Number of Nouns, and on Strong Verbs.

77. To supply losses, the functions of other parts of speech have been extended. The loss of the old

relative pronouns *se, the,* &c. left us the neuter in-declinable *that;* after a time the interrogatives were employed in their stead. *See* Relative Pronouns.

78. The English language has lost most of the older inflexions, hence its words are no longer formally distinguished (as in Latin, Greek, &c.) as belonging to certain parts of speech without reference to their use in a sentence. The functions of words like *homo, amare,* &c. are limited, but in English almost any part of speech may be used as any other part of speech.[1]

Thus a verb may become a noun without any change of form.

> " They think nothing they shall from it pass,
> When all that is shall be turned to *was.*"
> > HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure.*

> " For He [God] is wythoute *wes,* wythoute *ssel by,*"
> (For He is without *was,* and without *shall be.*)
> > *Ayenbite,* p. 104.

Even in Shakespeare the preterite of a verb has been converted into a substantive: a feat not easily performed by any synthetical language, cp.

> "No *had,* my Lord !" *King John,* iv. 2, 207.

'This formal fool, your man, speaks nought but proverbs; and speak men, what they can to him, he'll answer with some rhyme-rotten sentence, or old saying : such *spokes* as the ancient of the parish use."
> > H. PORTER's *Two Angry Women of Abingdon.*

" Where Galaad made his avowes and *hightes* (promises)."
> > HARDYNG's *Chronicle,* p. 133.

Hight = the preterite of the old verb *hatan* to call, promise.

---

[1] See Abbott's " Shakspearian Grammar.

A substantive is easily used as a verb, thus Fuller in speaking of those writers who multiply on the map of the Holy Land streams bearing the name of "River of Egypt," says:—

"Such is the nimiety of my caution herein, who have *Egypt rivered* this map to purpose."

FULLER, *A Pisgah sight of Palestine*, p. 618, ed. 1869.

"Do you think I *fable* with you."

BEN JONSON'S *Alchemist*.

"*Rob.* 'Las sir, that lamb
Were most unnatural that should hate the dam.
Steph. Lamb me no lambs, Sir. .

ROWLEY, *A New Wonder*.

Adjectives are used as verbs without even the verbal ending -en. Shakespeare uses *to fat*, to fatten. Cp. thai *greteth* = grandescunt, *become great* (Palladius, *On Husbondrie*).

In Latin, nominal verbs are not uncommon, but they have a verbal form given them by the suffix to which the inflexions are added as *arbor-esc-o* from *arbor*, a tree. Fuller renders "*Hæc planta in Judæâ* aborescit*" by—

"Hissop *doth tree it* in Judæa."

A Pisgah Sight, p. 194.

An adverb may do duty for a verb, as :—

"They *askance* their eyes.

SHAKSPEARE'S *Rape of Lucrece*.

Cp. "To *back* the horses," &c.

A preposition and a numeral, originally forming an adverbial phrase, has established itself as a verb and produced a noun. Cp. *atone* and *atonement*.

> " The constable is called to *atone* the broil."
>> T. Heywood's *English Traveller.*

> " To *atone* two Israelites at variance."
>> Fuller, *A Pisgah Sight,* p. 519.

Any noun may be turned into an adjective; as a *gold* watch, a *church* steeple, a *silk* thread.

By the simple use of the suffix *-ed* (= possessing), we are able to give a participial, and therefore an adjective appearance to almost any noun. Cp. *booted, spurred, one-eyed,* &c.

> " As the Jews' coats were *collared* above, so they were *skirted* and *fringed* below, by God's special command."
>> Fuller, *A Pisgah Sight,* p. 524.

Adjectives are easily converted into nouns. Cp. *simples, worthies, seconds.*

> " When I first took thee, 'twas for *good* and *bad.*
>   O change thy *bad* to *good.*"
>> T. Heywood, *The late Lancashire Witches.*

> " Fear not my fall ; the *steep* is fairest *plain.*"
>> Lord Brooke's *Alaham.*

" O these *extremes* of misery and joy.

. . . .

'Tis said sometimes they'll [evil spirits] impudently stand
A flight of beams from the *forlorn* of day,
And scorn the crowing of the sprightly cocks."
>> J. Crowne's *Thyestes.*

> " And shall the *baser* over-rule the *better ?*
>   Or are they better since they are the bigger."
>> Chapman's *Byron's Tragedy.*

> " Jove but my *equal,* Cæsar but my *second.*"
>> Ben Jonson's *Sad Shepherd*

Even pronominal forms are occasionally employed as nouns :—

> "The cruel'st *she* alive."
>> SHAKESPEARE *Twelfth Night*, Act I. Sc. 5.

> "The *shes* of Italy."
>> *Cymbeline*, Act I. Sc. 4.

> "A wretch, a worm, a *nothing.*"
>> FORD's *'Tis Pity*, &c.

> "Speak of thy fair *self*, Edith."
>> J. FLETCHER's *Bloody Brother.*

"An unthroughfaresome *whatkin*" (an impenetrable something).—FAIRFAX.

Interjections may be converted into substantives or verbs :—

> "The effect of thine *O-yes.*"
>> DEKKER, *Gull's Hornbook.*

> "All the *fohs* in fairest ladys' mouths."
>> *Ib.*

> "This sorrowful *heigho.*"
>> NASH, *Lenten Stuff.*

> "Cough and *hem.*"

> "*Mew* at passionate speeches."
>> *Ib.*

Mum and *hem* are used as adjectives in the following passage :—

> "Now pleased, now froward, now *mum*, now *hem.*"
>> *Calisto and Melibæa.*

A slight change of pronunciation replaces an inflexion. Cp. bathe and bath, glaze and glass, luct and condu'ct.

CHAPTER VII.

Nouns.

I. GENDER.

79. Gender is a grammatical distinction and applies to *words* only. Sex is a natural distinction, and applies to *living objects.*

By personification we can speak of inanimate things as male or female, as

" The *Sun* in *his* glory, the *Moon* in *her* wane."

In the oldest English, *Sun* was treated as a feminine noun, and *Moon* as masculine. This usage was kept up as late as the fourteenth century, and later still in rare instances.

80. In the oldest English, the grammatical distinction of words as masculine, feminine and neuter, was marked by difference of endings, and difference of declensions.

Nouns ending in **-dom**, as *freodom* (freedom) were masculine ; nouns ending in **-ung**, as *gretung* (greeting), and in **-nes**, as *godnes* (godness), were feminine ; and some diminutives in **-en**, as *mægden* (maiden), and *cycen* (chicken), were neuter ; *wife* and *child* were originally neuter ; *tongue, earth, week,* &c. were feminine, and *star, sea, tear,* &c. were masculine nouns.

Adjectives and many demonstrative and indefinite pronouns, (*he, the, this, such, an, some,* &c.) were declined in three genders, and agreed with the substantives to which they were joined in gender as well as in number and case.

81. After the Norman Conquest, adjectives and adjective pronouns lost most of their case-suffixes in the three genders, so that the older distinctions could not well be kept up. In the fourteenth century, the genders of nouns were exchanged for mere marks of sex, names of males being of the *masculine* gender, those of females of the *feminine* gender, and the names of inanimate things of the *neuter* gender ; so that, strictly speaking, the so-called *genders* in modern English do not belong to the *words* at all, but only to the objects they represent. The only *genders* in English are in the Pronouns.

82. There are three ways of distinguishing the masculine and feminine.

I. By the use of suffixes.

II. By composition.

III. By using distinct words for the name of the male and female.

Only the first method comes under the head of grammatical gender.

I.—GENDER MARKED BY DIFFERENCES OF ENDINGS.

83. *A.*—Teutonic Suffixes.

These are now no longer in general use.

We have a trace of two old English suffixes to mark the feminine: (1) -en, (2) -ster.

Vix-en (O.F. *Fyx-en*), the feminine of fox (M.E.

vox), is the only one we have preserved out of a tolerably large number once in common use in the oldest English, as

Masc.	Fem.
ælf (elf).	ælf-en (she-elf).
câs-ere (emperor).	câser-en (empress).
munec (monk).	munec-en (nun).
theôw (man-servant).	thêow-en (maid-servant).

In the fourteenth century the feminine in -en is rarely met with.

The change from o to i is regular when compared with the old English **god** (god), **gyd-en** (goddess), and **wulf** (wolf), **wylfen** (she-wolf). Cp. Ger. *Fuchs*, *Füchs-inn*. This change is brought about by the addition of the original vowel in the syllable -en. Cp. **gold** and **gilden**; **cock** and **chicken.**[1]

The suffix -ster exists in **spin-ster**. This is not strictly a feminine noun, because it does not correspond to a masculine **spinner**, but is merely restricted to an unmarried woman.

It originally meant a female spinner, as in the following passages :—

" Let the three housewifely *spinsters* of destiny rather curtail the thread of thy life."   *The Gull's Hornbook.*

" And my wyf at Westmunstre that wollene cloth made,
·   Spak to the *spinsters* for to spinne hit softe."
          Piers Plowman, A. Pass. v. 130.

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries we find

---

[1] This change of the root-vowel (produced by assimilation of two vowels) is called, by German grammarians, *umlaut.*

sempster, songster, huckster, and **tapster** used as feminine substantives :—

"Wassel, like a neat **sempster,** and **songster** *her* page bearing a brown bowl." BEN JONSON.

"The tapper of Tavystocke and the tapsters potte."
JACK JUGGLER, p. 68, *Ed. Roxb. Club.*

"The backster of Baldockburye with *her* bakinge pele (*rod*)."
Ib.

In the oldest English feminine nouns ending in -estre (-ster), corresponded to masculines in -ere (er).

Masc.	Fem.
bæc-ere (baker).	bæc-estre.
hearp-ere (harper).	hearp-estre.
hopp-ere (dancer).	hopp-estre.
rêd-ere (reader).	rêd-estre.
sang-ere (singer).	sang-estre.
seâm-ere (sewer).	seâm-estre.
tæpp-ere (barman).	bæpp-estre.
webb-ere (weaver).	webb-estre.

In the fourteenth century the Norman-French suffix -ess began to replace the English -ster, though the older form lived on for some time side by side with its foreign substitute.

In Wicliffe we find *sleestere* and *sleeresse* (a woman slayer), *dwellstere* and *dwelleress* (female dweller), *singster* and *singeresse* (songster). The employment of **webster** and **songster** (Wicliffe), **huckster** (Trevisa), **shepster, backstere** and **brewstere** (Langland's " Piers Plowman "), **beggestere** (Chaucer), as masculine substantives shows us that even at this early period (Middle English) the force of the suffix was con-

siderably weakened, and its origin obscured by the frequent use of the new ending -ess.

In the seventeenth century the following hybrids (containing the English -ster and the Norman-French -ess) made their appearance; **song-str-ess, seam-str-ess, huck-str-ess, spin-str-ess** (Howell), **tap-str-ess** (T. Heywood).

The suffix **-ster** now merely marks the agent; as, **maltster**; often with more or less a sense of contempt or depreciation, as, **gamester, punster, trickster, youngster.**

A large number of words with this suffix, very common in the Elizabethan period, have gone out of common use : *drugster, hackster, lewdster, oldster, roadster,* &c.

84. In the oldest English -a marks the masculine, and -e the feminine gender.

Masc.	Fem.
ass-a (ass).	ass-e.
mag-a (kinsman).	mag-e.
nef-a (nephew).	nef-e.
rǽg-a, râha (hart).	rǽg-e.
webb-a (weaver).	webb-e.
wicc-a (sorcerer).	wice-e.
widuw-a (widower).	widuw-e.
han-a (cock).	hen (= henn-e).
gât, (goat).	gât-e.
wulf (wolf).	wylf (= wylf-e).
hlâford (lord).	hlafdig-e.

In the thirteenth century -a was weakened to -e, consequently there was no distinction in form between the masculine and feminine, hence words like **webbe** might mean a male or female weaver. (It is masculine in Chaucer, and feminine in "Piers Plowman.")

F

Witch was of the common gender up to a very late period.

"Your honour is a *witch*"

SIR WALTER SCOTT, *Fortunes of Nigel*, 2.

Wizzard has no connection with witch, but is the O.F. *guisc-* *-art*, a wise man.

Widower is a new formation from the feminine *widow*; it occurs in "Piers Plowman" (B. ix. 174).

Neve (= nef-a) gave way in the thirteenth century to *nephew* (M.E. *nevew*, *nevu*; from O.F. *nevou*, Lat. *nepos*), but the old feminine **nifte** was kept up to a much later period.

85. *B.*—Romance Suffixes.

(1) **-ess** (Fr. *-esse* M. Lat. *-issa*). The Latin *-issa* makes its appearance before the Norman Conquest in **abbudisse**, abbess. Before the middle of the fourteenth century, the Norman-French **-ess** occurs only a few times as the ending of Romance words that had already found their way into the language. **Cuntesse** (countess) is found as early as 1140; **clergesse** occurs about 1210; **hostesse** and **emperesse** about 1278; **charmeresse** and **maystresse** (mistress) in 1340.

In the time of Wicliffe and Chaucer, this suffix established itself in the language as the ending of feminine nouns, being added to English as well as Romance roots.

Wicliffe has **-ess** for **-ster** in **dawnseresse, frend-esse, neighboresse, techeresse, thralesse.** He uses **-ess** in many substantives that had no **-ess** in Norman-French, as **cosynesse, devouresse, prophetesse, servauntesse, spousesse.**

In the Elizabethan period the number of words in **-ess** was far greater than at present; this shows that the suffix is now restricted in its application. We no

longer retain **waggoness, rectress** (Chapman), **doctress** (Stanyhurst), **neatress** (Warner), **fosteress** (Ben Jonson), &c.

One form is now frequently used in both genders, as *singer, dancer, cousin, spouse,* &c.

In modern English, -ess is the ordinary suffix of the feminine, and it is added both to native and borrowed words, as **goddess, murderess, actress, baroness.**

a. The suffix -**ess** is added to the simple masculine as **baroness.**

b. The masculine ending is sometimes dropped before the -**ess**; as **sorceress** from **sorcerer.**

c. The masculine ending is shortened before the addition of -**ess**; as **actress** from **actor.**

Duchess is from O.F. *duc-esse, duch-esse.*

Marchioness is formed from M.L. *marchio.*

Mistress = O.F. and O.E. *maistresse* from *maister* = *master* and *mister.*

Lass is perhaps a contraction of *laddess.*

(2) -**ine** in **hero-ine**; and in **landgrav-ine** and **margrav-ine,** from the German **landgrave** and **margrave.**

(3) -**a** in **donn-a, infanta, sultana, signora.**

(4) Lat. -**trix** from Latin nouns in -**tor** occurs in some nouns taken directly from the Latin, as **adjutor, adjutrix, testator, testatrix.**

Empress was originally *emperice,* Fr. *imperatrice,* Lat. acc. *imperatricem.*

Nurse = M.E. *nurice, norise,* Fr. *nourrice,* Lat. acc. *nutricem.*

II. Gender denoted by Composition.

86. In the oldest English we find instances of a general term compounded with an attribute, as *man-cild* = manchild; *carl-fugol* = a male fowl (bird); *cwenfugol*, a female bird; *wîfman*, woman; *wîf-freond*, a female friend.

In the fourteenth century we find *knave-child*, boy; *mayde-child*, girl (Trevisa); *men-syngers, wymmen-syngers, male-child, female*-bere, *she*-bere, *hee-geyte*, he-goat (Wicliffe).

In Modern English, we use

(1) **Male** and **female** as **male**-servant, **female-**servant; **male-cat, female-bee.**

(2) **Man, woman,** or **maid,** as **man**-servant, **woman**-servant, or **maid**-servant. Sometimes **man** is added to the feminine, and **woman** to the **mas-culine** to mark contempt; as **man**-milliner, **woman-titan.**

(3) **He** and **she** occur mostly in the names of animals, as **he**-goat, **she**-goat.

This last method was not employed in the oldest English, and did not come into use before the fourteenth century, and then only in the names of animals.

In the Elizabethan period **he** and **she** were used as nouns.

> " The proudest *he*."—Shakespeare.

> " These *shes* were nymphs of the chymney."
>
> Fuller.

It is used as late as Dryden's time.

> " Another *he*."—*Abs. and Achith.*

III. Different Words for the Masculine and Feminine.

87. The use of distinct words for the masculine and feminine, as *father, mother*, &c. does not belong to grammatical gender.

88. A few correlative terms, apparently distinct, are etymologically connected.

Masc.	Fem.
lad.	lass (= lad-ess).
lord.	lady (a final *e*, denoting the fem. has been lost).
nephew.	niece (Cp. Lat. nepos, neptis).
king.	queen (from the root *kin ;* the primitive meaning of king = father; queen = mother).

89. The rule that the feminine is formed from the masculine is violated in the following words, in which the masculine is formed from the feminine :—

(1) Bridegroom (from **bride**) = the bride's man ; groom = *goom,* O.E. *guma,* E.E. *gome,* a man. There was an E.E. *grom* = boy.

(2) Widower (from **widow**). *See* § 35, p. 19.

(3) Gander (from **gans**, the original form of **goose**).

In the O.E. *gandr-a* (= *ganr-a* = *gans-a*), the **a** is the sign of the masculine ; **d** is merely a euphonic addition after **n**, and **r** represents a more original **s**.

(4) Drake is a compound from the root **end** (a duck), with an obsolete suffix **-rake**, signifying *king.* (Cp. the suffix **-rick** in *bishoprick*).

II.—NUMBER.

90. English, like most modern languages, has two numbers, **singular** and **plural.**

Some languages, as French, have only one mode of forming the plural. In English, we have various ways of denoting the plural, one only of which (the addition of s·to the singular), is in common use.

In the oldest English there were several plural suffixes, -as, -an, -a, -u (-o): **stan-as** = stones, **steorr-an** = stars, **hand-a** = hands, **lim-u** = limbs. The most common of these was the suffix **-an.** After the Norman Conquest these were reduced (in the thirteenth century) to -es, -en ; and finally the termination -es or -s became the ordinary sign of the plural.

The suffix -as was originally the plural sign of only *one* declension of masculine nouns, as **fisc** (fish), **smith** ; pl., **fisc-as, smith-as.** It is now the only *living* suffix which is employed when we borrow new nouns and inflect them in the plural. All other plural endings are merely the relics of a former period in which they had a living power and were not irregular.

After the Norman Conquest the suffix -as became -es (later -us, -ys, -is,) and still remained for the most part a distinct syllable.

> " His *sonès* and his *doughtrës*, bothe I mene."
> OCCLEVE, *De Reg. Prin.* 620.

> " To heere *Godus wordus* thei han forborn. "
> *O. E. Misc. p.* 226.

> " Her *bodyus* wer lyke *dragonys,*
> Hor *tayles* wer lyke *schorpyonys,*
> They had *naylys* on her *knocus,*
> That wer lyke ankyr *hokys.*"
>> *Tundal,* 41 *ed.* 1843.
>> " His life
> That vanisht into smoke and *cloudes* swift."
>> SPENSER, *Faerie Queene,* I. xi. 54.

In the fourteenth century, words of French origin
were the first to thrust out the **e,** and adopt the simple
suffix **-s** (or *-z*).

This loss of **e** brings the letter **-s** into immediate
contact with the final letter of the singular, and causes
the following phonetic modifications :—

a. If the singular noun ends in a **flat consonant,
a liquid, or a vowel,** -s has the sound of *z,* as
tubs, lads, stags, hills, hens, feathers, days,
&c.

b. If the singular ends in a **sharp consonant, -s**
is pronounced sharp, (as in *mouse,*) as **traps, pits,
stacks,** &c. (For the reason of this see § 63, p. 45.)

As far as the spoken language is concerned, it
would be more correct to say that the plural is formed
by adding **s** or **z** to the singular.

The fuller form **-es** (pronounced *-ez*) for the plural, is obliged
to be retained when the singular ends in a sibilant or palatal
sound (**s, z, x, sh, ch, j**), as **gas-es, glass-es, wish-es,
priz-es, fox-es, church-es, ag-es, judg-es.**

Nouns of pure English origin, whose singulars end in *-f, -fe,*
preceded by a long vowel (except **oo**) or by **l,** change the **f** into
v, and retain the older ending **-es,** as **leaf, leaves, wife,
wives, wolf, wolves.**

This change of **f** to **v** is not known before the eleventh cen-
tury. In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries we find it taking
place in the *dative case* of nouns, *wif* (nom.), *wive* (dative), an

in the plural of adjectives *def* (sing.) *deve* (pl.) deaf.   It seems that f between two vowels was pronounced as v.   Cp. O.E. *heafod*, E.E. *heved*, M.E. *heed*, head, &c.

Pure English words in -ff, rf, and all borrowed words in -f, form their plurals in s, as cliffs, dwarfs, hoofs, briefs, proofs.

Nouns ending in y not preceded by a vowel retain the older spelling in the plural, as fly, flies, city, cities.

In M.E. the singular ended in -*ie*, or *ye*, as, flie, citie.

Y remains unchanged if it is preceded by another vowel, and the plural is regularly formed, as, **boys, plays.**

Remains of older Plural Formations.

91. Plural formed by Vowel Change.   The chief changes are—

Sing.	Plural.
a.	e.
oo.	ee.
ou.	i.

Sing.	Plural.
man, O.E. man.	men, O.E. men.
foot, O.E. fôt.	feet, O.E. fêt.
goose, O.E. gôs.	geese, O.E. gês.
tooth, O.E. tôth.	teeth, O.E. têth.
mouse, O.E. mûs.	mice, O.E. mŷs.
louse, O.E. lûs.	lice, O.E. lŷs.
cow, O.E. cu.	ki(-ne), O.E. cŷ.

In these words the primitive suffix s has been lost together with a preceding vowel, which modified the root vowel. Thus the old pl. of *boc* (a book) was *lêc*, which stands for a more primitive *bocis*. This change of vowel was not limited to the plural, but took place in the dative of all these words, as, *boc* (nom.) *bêc* (dative).

Breeches, breeks, had for its oldest plural *brêc*, M.E. *breek*, formed by vowel change from *brôc*. *Byrig,*

fyrig, tyrf, were once the plurals of *borough* (O.E. *burh*), *furrow* (O.E. *furh*), *turf* (O.E. *turf*).

92. **Plurals in -en** (O.E. -an), as **ox, oxen.**
Hosen (English Bible), **shoon** (Shakespeare), are more or less obsolete. Spenser has **eyen** (eyes), and **foen** (foes). In a work written about 1420 we find *been* (bees), *een* (eyes), *fleen* (flies), *pesen* (peas), *toon* (toes).

In the oldest English, plurals in -en were exceedingly common; in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries they became still more numerous because the older plurals in -a, -u, became first -e, and then -en.[1]

In the fourteenth century they became of less frequent occurrence, and in the northern dialects only *eyen, oxen,* and *hosen* were in common use.

Children, brethren, and kine did not originally form their plurals in -en (-n).

Children.—The oldest plural was **cild-r-u,** which became (i) **child-r-e** (and **childer**)[2]; (ii) **child-r-en** (and **childern**).

> "The *childer* are pretty *childer.*"
>   BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight of the Burning Pestle,* Act. I. Sc. 2.

In M.E. we find *calvr-en* (calves), *eyr-en* (eggs), and *lambr-en* (lambs): the last two are found as late as 1420.
>   "Late *lamber*" = late lambs.
>   PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie,* p. 145, l. 154.

Brethren was (1) **brothr-u,** (2) **brothr-e, brethr-e** (**brether**), (3) **brothren, brethren.**

---

[1] For proof of this, see O.E. Hom. first series, pp. xxvii.—xxxii.; second series, p. xiv.; Ayenbite of Inwyt, pp. xi-xxv.

[2] The E.E. -re became M.E. -er. Cp. **alre** = aller, (of all).

The old *brether* is found very late. " These be my mother, *brether*, and sisters" (Bishop Pilkington, died **1575**). *Brethers* occurs in the *Romance of Partenay*.

The *e* in brethren comes from the dative *brĕther*.

In E.E. we find *dehtren*, in M.E. *deȝter*, originally *dohtru* ; the dative singular was *dĕhter*.

Kine (M.E. **kin, ken**) is a double plural.   See § 91, p. 72.

> " Fat and fair *ky*."
> > *Cursor Mundi*, p. 259, l. 4566.

Kine has had a collective sense (like *pease* and T.E. *hose*), ever since the sixteenth century.

> " *Kine* or oxen."
> > FITZHERBERT'S *Husbondrie*, A.D. 1598.

93. Some words, originally neuter, take no plural sign, as in the oldest English : **deer, sheep, swine, neat.**

These words have acquired a collective sense, cp. the use of *fish, fowl, fruit,* &c., *gross, fathom, foot,* &c.

94. Substantives having two Plural forms, with different meanings.

Brothers (by blood) ; **brethren** (of an order or community).

Cloths (sorts of cloth) ; **clothes** (garments, clothing).

Dies (a stamp for coining) ; **dice** (for gaming).

Pennies (a number of separate coins); **pence** (collective).

Pennies = O.E. *penegas*, (E.E., M.E. *pennyes, pans, pens*), without any distinction of meaning. *Pence*, compounded with a numeral as the name of a separate piece of money, is regarded

as singular and takes a plural, as, two *sixpences.* But this is a comparatively modern usage.

> " A hundred pieces of *vi pence."*
> > *The Book of Princes,* p. 164.

The forms pence, mice, &c. show that the O.E. s had only the sharp sound in *mouse* and not the flat sound in *pens.*

Peas (taken individually, the plural of *pea*), **pease** (taken collectively).

Pease O.E. *pisa* (pl. *pesen*), is the correct form.

> " *Pease* are an excellent seede."
> > FITZHERBERT'S *Husbondrie,* p. 15.

In M.E. we find the plurals *pesen* and *peses.* The s in *pease* belongs to the root (Cp. Lat. *pisum*) and is no sign of the plural, but this was lost sight of when pea was coined, making its plural peas.

> "A red berry as big as a *pease."*
> > GERARDE'S *Herbal,* p. 53.

> " Benes, *peses."*—PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie,* p. 149, l. 8.

When two forms of a word occur, they must either get different meanings and so be utilised, or else one of them must drop out of use. Cp. *morrow* and *morning, latest* and *last,* &c.

95. False Plurals.

The s in **alms, riches, eaves,** is not a sign of the plural any more than it is in *largess, lachess,* &c. These words are however treated as plural, although singular in form.

Alms is a curtailed form of the O.E. *ælmesse,* pl. *ælmessen* (M.E. *almesse, almes,* T.E. *almous ;* pl. *almessen, almesses*). Cp. *alms-*deed ;

> " Angels desire *an alms.*
> > MASSINGER, *The Virg. Mart.* iv. 3.
> > See Acts iii. 3.

Riches.—M.E. *richesse,* pl. *richesses,* O.F. *richesce,* Fr. *richesse.*

"Yet all the *riches* in the world that *is* riseth of the ground
    by God's sending."

.   .   .   .   .   .

"Yet *is* not this *riches* of thy getting."
    The Four Elements, in Old Eng. Plays, ed. Hazlitt, p. 8.

Eaves = O.E. *yfes, efese,* margin, edge ; (M.E. *eves,
ovis ;* pl. *eveses*); pl. *efesen* (cp. T.E. *esen-droppers*).

"Ysekeles in *eveses.*"
    Piers Plowman, B. p. 315.

96. Plural Forms treated as Singulars.

Some plural forms are frequently treated as sin-
gulars ; as, **amends, bellows, gallows, means,
news, odds, pains, shambles, tidings, wages,
thanks, small-pox** (= small-*pock-s ;* cp. *pock*-mark).

"A little *amends.*"
    Spectator ; Piers Plowman, B. p. 338.
"A *gallows.*"—*Esther,* V. 14.
"The *bellows blows.*"
    SHAKESPEARE, *Pericles,* I. 2.
"A *means.*"—*Winter's Tale,* IV. 3.
"By this *means ;*" "this *news.*"
    Measure for Measure, III. 2.
"A fearful *odds.*"—*King Henry IV.,* Part III.
"That *tidings.*"—*Julius Cæsar,* IV. 3.
"A *shambles.*"—WHITLOCK, p. 97.
"A *thanks.*"
    BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, vol. I. p. 5.
"The small-*pocke.*"—A. BOORDE.

The singulars *amend, gallow, mean, pain, tiding, wage, thank,*
are found in older writers.

97. Nouns used only in the Plural.

(1) These are the names of things that consist of
more than one part, or form a pair.

a. Parts of the body, and bodily ailments.—*Lights, lungs, intestines,* &c.; *measels, mumps, staggers, yellows* (the jaundice).

. *b.* Articles of dress.—*Drawers, trowsers, breeches, mittens,* &c.

c. Tools, instruments, &c.—*Scissors, shears, tongs, scales,* &c.

(2) The names of things considered in the mass or aggregate.—*Ashes, embers, lees, molasses,* &c.

98. **Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural**; as, *beef, beeves; copper, coppers; spectacle, spectacles,* &c.

99. Foreign Plurals.

Foreign words, when naturalized, form their plural in the ordinary English way, as, *indexes, memorandums, automatons, focuses, beaus,* &c. Others, imperfectly naturalized, still retain their foreign plural.

	Sing.	Plural
(1) Latin.	formula	formulæ
	datum	data
	radius	radii
	species	species
(2) Greek.	axis	axes
	phenomenon	phenomena
(3) Romance.	monsieur	messieurs
	bandit	banditti
(4) Hebrew.	cherub	cherubim
	seraph	seraphim

Some of these have two plurals with different meanings : as, *indexes* and *indices ; geniuses* and *genii ; cherubs* and *cherubim.*

Acoustics, analytics, ethics, optics, politics, were originally adjectives. We say *logic,* but *logics* is still used at the Irish Universities.

100. Plural of Compounds.

In compounds the plural is formed by **s**, as, *black-birds, paymasters*. When the adjective (after the French idiom) is the last part of a compound, the sign of the plural is added to the noun, *attorneys-general, courts-martial, knights-errant,* &c. ; cp. the prepositional compounds, *sons-in-law, lookers-on.* In a few titles the last usually takes the plural sign, as *major-generals, lord-lieutenants.* A few others have both terms in the plural, *knights-templars, lords-justices, lords-appellants.*

We say *master-bakers* but Robert of Brunne has *masters mareschals.*

Compounds in **-full** were once strictly adjectival (cp. *baleful,* &c.), and took no plural.

> " Three *sponefull* of vinger."
> > A. BOORDE.
>
> " A *potful* hony."
> > PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie,* p. 95, l. 968.
> " Syx hondred *syppuol* knystes."
> > ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER, l. 3523.
> " Thre *schipful* of knystes."
> > *Ib.* l. 2418.

III.—CASE.

101. The different forms which a noun (or pronoun) takes, to mark its relations to other words in a sentence, are called **Cases**.

The moveable or variable suffixes that express these relations are called *case-endings*.

Case means a *falling*. The nominative was considered by the old grammarians as the upright form, from which the other

forms were *fallings off*, or declinations (Cp. the term declension).
The Romans applied the term *case* to the nominative (*casus
rectus*); not so the Greeks, from whom the idea was borrowed.

The oldest English had six cases : **Nominative,
Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative,** and
Instrumental.

In Modern English we have the subject-noun or
Nominative case, the object-noun or *Objective case,* and
the *Possessive case.* The *Nominative* and *Objective case*
of nouns have the same form, and both are without
case-endings. The *Objective* includes the *Accusative*
or direct object of a transitive verb, and the imper-
sonal object or *Dative case,* generally expressed by
the noun with the preposition *to* or *for* before it. It
is sometimes called the *Indirect object.*

The true Dative (of nouns and pronouns) is seen
in such expressions as, *he bought* his brother a farm ;
I made me *great works ; woe worth the* day ; *woe is*
me ; me-*thinks,* me-*seems,* &c. The infinitive of
purpose is a dative in " *Their feet make haste* to shed
blood."

We have preserved the O.E. genitive -s, but all other endings
have gone ; e for the dative singular, and um for the plural have
disappeared.

In the thirteenth century a final e represented both the
singular and plural dative. The loss of this final e in the
fourteenth century, left the dative and accusative undistinguished
in form from the nominative.

Possessive Case.

102. The **Possessive** case, unlike the Nomina-
tive and Objective, is marked by a distinct form. Our
possessive is the representative of the older genitive,

but we can see how much its force is weakened when we find as late as 1420 such expressions as *strengthes qualitee* (the quality of strength), *cannys knottes* (the knots of cane), *vynes rootes* (roots of vines).

In the oldest English there were various declensions, as in Greek and Latin, and different genitive suffixes for the singular and the plural.

The suffixes for the singular in the first period were -es, *smith-es* (smith's), -an, *steorr-an,* (star's) -e, *rod-e* (rood's) -a, *sun-a* (son's).

For the plural they were -a, as, *smith-a, rod-a, sun-a ;* -ena, as, *steorr-ena.*

In the thirteenth century the suffixes of the genitive in the singular were -es and -e; in the plural -ene (-en), -e, and the modern form -es which often replaced the others.

In the fourteenth century -es (-s) is the ordinary suffix for singular and plural. The suffix -en, -ene (gen. pl.) is found as late as 1387 ; *wycchen* tonges (*Trevisa,* II. p. 187) = tongues of witches. See extract from *Trevisa* on p. 95.

103. The O.E. suffix -es was at first limited to the singular of certain masculine and neuter nouns, but was afterward extended to the feminine.

The expression *lady-day* is the last relic of the old mode of forming the genitive feminine. Fabyan (A.D. 1516) has *Mary Mawdelayne day,* (Chronicle, p. 488).

This ending -es (-us, -ys, -is) made a distinct syllable in the older stages of the language.

> " And by the *popes* mediacioun."
>> CHAUCER, *Man of Lawes Tale,* l. 234.
> " And cristendom of *prestes handes* fonge."
>>> *Ib.* l. 377.
> "The *nightes* char (car) the stars about doth bring."
>> LORD SURREY.
> " Larger than the *moones* sphere."
>> SHAKESPEARE, *Midsum. Night's Dream,* II. I.

Formation of the Possessive Case.

104. The **Possessive case** (singular and plural) is formed in the written language by the suffix -s. In the *spoken* language it has the same phonetic modifications as the plural -s. (*See* § 90, p. 71, § 63, p. 45).

The apostrophe in the singular marks the elison of the e of the old -es.

The general use of the apostrophe in the singular is not found much before the end of the seventeenth century. It was probably employed to distinguish the possessive case from the plural number. Its use may have been established from a false theory of the origin of the suffix -s, which prevailed from Ben Jonson's to Addison's time, namely, that it was a contraction of *his*, hence such expressions as :—

> "For Jesus Christ *his* sake."—*Prayer Book.*
> "The emblem is *Camerarius his* " = (Camerarius's).
>   WHITLOCK, p. 52.

We find this corruption towards the close of the fourteenth century. Trevisa has "*egle hys nest* " = eagle's nest.

-is, another form of -es was sometimes written apart from its noun, and hence perhaps the confusion of his with -is, or -es.

In the thirteenth century we find his for -is (-es) intentionally used after proper names.

Nouns forming their plural by vowel change, or by the suffix -*n*, take the possessive sign after the plural ; as, *men's, oxen's, children's.*

Nouns forming their plurals in -s were thought to be without the case-sign ; hence in writing the possessive came to be marked by the apostrophe, as **boys'**.[1]

When a singular noun ends in an s sound, the possessive sign is dropped, and the apostrophe (often

---

[1] This came about in the seventeenth century, through the notion that the s in *boys'* was the sign of the plural number, and not of the possessive case.

omitted) marks its absence; as, for *justice'* sake, for *conscience'* sake, your *highness'* love, &c.

In foreign proper names (of two or more syllables) ending in **s**, the possessive is unchanged. Cp. *Moses'* law, *Thetis'* wrath, *Olympus'* top.

In common English names we generally sound an additional syllable; as *James's* (pronounced *Jâmz-ez*).

                " *Peersses* bernes ; " " *Peersses* wyf."

                                    Piers Plowman, C. p. 148.

105. In compounds the possessive suffix is added to the last term, *the son-in-law's house, William-the-Conqueror's reign.*

Sometimes we find the principal substantive inflected as in the older stages.

     " For his *grace's* sake the cardinal."—FORD.

     " Constance the *Kynges* sister of France"

     = The King of France's sister.—FABYAN.

     " *Eadwardes kynges* leave "

     = King Edward's leave.

     " On *Williames* daye the yonger *Kynges* "

     = On King William the younger's day.—*O.E. Miscell.* p. 145.

     " *Sæberhtes* deâth east seaxna *cyninges* "

     = The death of Sæberht, king of the East Saxons.—*Bed.* ii. 5.

The Case absolute.

106. In the oldest period the **dative** was the absolute case. About the middle of the fourteenth century the **nominative** began to replace it. Pecock (A.D. 1449) has a few instances of the *dative:* " Him it witing *and not* weerning," = *he knowing it and not forbidding it* (II. 325). Milton occasionally imitates the Latin construction, as " *him* destroyed." In the use of the passive participle we have introduced *being,* as, " this *being done,*" which was in the sixteenth century, " this *done.*"

107. Declension of the Old English Noun.

I.—MASCULINE AND NEUTER NOUNS FORMING THE GENITIVE IN -es.

wulf, wolf; scip, ship; word, word.

Singular.

	Masculine.		Neuter.	
Nom. } Voc. }	wulf		scip	word
Gen.	wulf-es		scip-es	word-es
Dat.	wulf-e		scip-e	word-e
Acc.	wulf		scip	word
Inst.	wulf-ê		scip-ê	word-ê

Plural.

Nom. } Voc. }	wulf-as		scip-u	word
Gen.	wulf-a		scip-a	word-a
Dat.	wulf-um		scip-um	word-um
Acc.	wulf-as		scip-u	word
Inst.	wulf-um		scip-um	word-um

II.—FEMININE NOUNS FORMING THE GENITIVE IN -e.

gifu, gift; dæd, deed.

Singular.

Nom. } Voc. }	gif-u	dǽd
Gen.	gif-e	dǽd-e
Dat.	gif-e	dǽd-e
Acc.	gif-e	dæd (dæd-e)
Inst.	gif-ê	dæd-ê

Plural.

Nom. } Voc. }	gif-a	dæd-a, dæd-e
Gen.	gif-a (gif-ena)	dæd-a
Dat.	gif-um	dæd-um
Acc.	gif-a	· dæd-a, dæd-e
Inst.	gif-um	dæd-um

III.—STEMS IN -n.

steorr-a, star ; tung-e, tongue ; eâg-e, eye.

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. } Voc. }	steorr-a	tung-e	eâg-e
Gen.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Dat. } Inst. }	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Acc.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-e

Plural.			
Nom. } Voc. }	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Gen.	steorr-ena	tung-ena	eâg-ena
Dat. } Inst. }	steorr-um	tung-um	eâg-um
Acc.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an

IV.—STEMS IN -n.

brôthor, brother.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom. Acc. } Voc. }	brôthor	Nom. Acc. } Voc. }	brôthr-u, brôthor
Gen.	brôthor	Gen.	brôthr-a
Dat. } Inst. }	brêthor	Dat. } Inst. }	brothr-um

108. Declension of Nouns in the thirteenth century :—

I.—wulf, wolf; scip, ship ; word, word.

	Masc.	Neut.	
Nom. } Voc. }	wulf	scip, schip	word
Gen.	wulu-es (wulf-es)	scip-es	word-es
Dat.	wulu-e (wulf-e)	scip-e (scip-en)	word-e
Acc.	wulf	scip	word

Plural.

Masc.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	wulu-es (wulf-es)
Gen.	wulu-e (wulu-en, wulu-ene)
Dat.	wulu-e (wulu-es, wulu-en)

Neut.

Nom. Acc. Voc.	scip-e (scip-en, scip-es)	word, (word-es)
Gen.	scip-e (scip-ene, scip-es)	word-e (word-es)
Dat.	scip-e (scip-en, scip-es)	word, (word-es)

II.—Hand (hond), hand ; dede, deed.

Singular.

	Fem.		Fem.
Nom. Acc. Voc.	ded-e		hond, hand
Gen.	ded-e		hond-e
Dat.	ded-e		hond-e

Plural.

	Fem.		Fem.
Nom. Acc. Voc.	ded-e (-en, -es)		hond-e (-en, -es)
Gen.	ded-e (-es)		hond-e (-es)
Dat.	ded-en (-e, -es)		hond-en (-e, -es)

III.—Sterr-e, star ; tunge, tongue ; eȝe, (eye).

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	sterr-e	tung-e	eȝ-e
Gen.	sterr-e(-en,-es)	tung-e (-es)	eȝ-e (-es)
Dat.	sterr-e (-en)	tung-e (-en)	eȝ-e (-en)
Acc.	sterr-e (-en)	tung-e (-en)	eȝ-e

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	sterr-en(-e,-es.	tung-en (-e, -es)	eȝ-en (-es)
Gen.	sterr-ene	tung-ene	eȝ-ene
Dat.	sterr-en (-e)	tung-en (-e)	eȝ-en (-e)
Acc.	sterr-en(-e,-es)	tung-en (-e, -es)	eȝ-en (-es)

IV.—The words fæder (fader), brother, suster, moder, doʒter, (dohter), in the singular take no genitive inflexion. In the dative we find sometimes a final -e. In the plural we find nominatives in -es, -en, -e; as faderes, brotheres (brothers), dohtres, sostres; brotheren, brethren, dohtren, deht en, sustren, modren; brothre, dohtere, &c.

In the thirteenth century the genitive plural has sometimes the suffix -ene (-en), but more often -es.

The dative plural ends in -en, -e and sometimes in -es.

In the fourteenth century there is but little trace of the dative singular or plural.

The nominative plural of nouns ends in -es (-is, -ys, -us), without respect to gender, though many plurals in -en are found.

The genitive singular ends in -es (-is, -us, -ys).

Some feminines keep up the old genitive form in -e.

The genitive plural for the most part is like the nominative plural. We have still a trace of the old genitive plural -ene, (-en). See § 102, p. 80.

CHAPTER VIII.

Adjectives.

109. The English adjective has lost all the older inflexions of *number, gender,* and *case.*

In Chaucer's time, and a little later, we find (1) a final **e** used to mark the plural, as, " the *smalë* fowles ;" (2) a final **e** to denote the definite adjective, " the *yongë* sonne," " his *halfë* cours."

Cp. " And quhen sche walkit had a lytill thrawe
Under the *suetë grenë* bewis bent,
Hir *fairë, freschë* face as quhite as any snawe
Sche turnyt has, and furth her wayis went."
JAMES I. OF SCOTLAND, *The Kingis Quhair.
about* 1423.[1]

In the phrase "in the olden time," we have perhaps a trace of the definite declension.

The word *ones* does duty for an inflexional **e** in the plural, as M.E, " these tweyne *olde* " = these two old ones.

110. Adjectives used as substantives form their plural regularly, as *wantons, calms, shallows.* In the fourteenth century only Norman-French adjectives used substantively could be thus inflected, as, *viles, preciouses ;* native words formed their plural by

---

[1] This is a Scottish imitation of Chaucer.

adding the final **e**, as *suete* (sweets), *soure* (sours).
In the sixteenth century we find this new method
extended to English words, as *yonges* = young ones
(L. Andrewe, in *Babees Book*, p. 231).

When an adjective of Norman-French origin qualified a
noun, it often formed its plural by adding s. Chaucer has *cosins
germains* as well as *capitalles lettres* (Astrolabe, p. 16). Traces
of this construction are found in Tudor English.

111. In **alderliefest** = dearest of all (Shakes-
peare, 2 *King Henry VI.* I. 1), we have one very late
instance of the old genitive plural suffix -**er**. **Alder**
= M.E. *aller*, E.E. *alre*, O.E. *al-ra*, the gen. pl. of
all.

> "Now Jesu Christ be your *alder* speed."
>> (*Everyman ;* published early in the reign of
>> Henry VIII. See old English Plays, ed.
>> Hazlitt, p. I. 135).

> " Adam owre *aller* fader."
>> *Piers Plowman*, B. p. 298.
> " Sweetest *alre* thinge."
>> *O.E. Miscell.* p. 166.

112. Declension of the O.E. Adjective.

STRONG OR INDEFINITE DECLENSION.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	blind	blind	blind
Gen.	blind-es	blind-re	blind-es
Dat.	blind-um	blind-re	blind-um
Acc.	blind-ne	blind-e	blind
Inst.	blind-ê	blind-re	blind-ê

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u
Gen.	blind-ra	blind-ra	blind-ra
Dat.	blind-um	blind-um	blind-um
Acc.	blind-e	blind-e	blind-u

WEAK OR DEFINITE DECLENSION.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Voc.	blind-a	blind-e	blind-e
Gen. Dat.	blind-an	blind-an	blind-an
Acc.	blind-an	blind-an	blind-en

Plural.

Masc., Fem., Neut.,

Nom. Voc. Acc.	blind-an
Gen.	blind-ena
Dat.	blind-um

113. In the thirteenth century we find the following forms of the strong declension.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. } Voc. }	blind	blind-e	blind
Gen.	blind-es	blind-re (-e)	blind-es
Dat.	blind-e (-en)	blind-re (-e)	blind-e
Acc.	blind-ne (-e)	blind-e	blind

Plural for all genders :—

Nom. } Voc. }	blind-e
Gen.	blind-ere (-re, -e)
Dat.	blind-en (-e)
Acc.	blind-e

The strong declension has for the most part all its cases in -e, sometimes its oblique cases in -en ; and throughout the plural -e (or -en).

Sometimes the definite form takes the inflexions of the indefinite declension.

In the fourteenth century we find a final e used to mark (1) the plural, and (2) the definite form and vocative case of the adjective.   (See § 109, p. 87).

Comparison of Adjectives.

114. **Comparison** is that change of form which the adjective undergoes to denote degrees of quantity or quality.   Adverbs that have sprung from adjectives may be compared.

There are three **degrees of comparison,** the **positive** or simple form of the adjective, the **comparative** formed by adding **-er** to the positive, the **superlative** by adding **-est** to the positive.

This rule applies (1) to all words of one syllable, (2) to some words of two syllables, especially those with the accent on the last syllable.

Orthographical changes :—

(1) When the positive ends in -e, the comparison is formed by ·r and -st. (2) Final y following a consonant is changed to i (*happy, happier, happiest*). (3) A final consonant after a short vowel is doubled, as, *wet, wetter, wettest; cruel, crueller, cruellest; cheerful, cheerfuller, cheerfullest.*

Adjectives of more than two syllables, and most adjectives of two syllables are compared by more and most.

The words *more* and *most* are pure English words, but the use of them to express comparison is due to Norman-French influence. This mode of comparison came into use towards the end of the thirteenth century, and was frequently employed by the writers of the fourteenth century.

But even at this time, adjectives of any number of syllables might be compared by -er and -est. The writers of the Elizabethan period paid very little regard to the length of the adjective. "The *delectablest* lusty sight and *movingest* object me thought it was."—NASH's *Lenten Stuff*, p. 9, ed. 1871.

115. Double comparisons are not uncommon in Middle and Modern English. Some of these double forms arose out of an attempt to strengthen the comparison, as *more kinder, most straitest.* Others arose through the comparative degree of some irregular forms being mistaken for the positive.

" The *lesser* lights."—*Gen.* i. 16.
" *More better.*"—*Temp.* i. 2.
" The *worser* of the twain."—WARNER.
" *Lesse* gifts and *lesser* gaines I weigh them not."
                    HALL's *Satyres*, Book II. 2.

Some numerals, pronominal words, prepositions, &c., have a comparative suffix, -ther (-ter), as o-ther, whe-ther, af-ter, un-der.

Traces of an old superlative m are to be found in form-er and for-m-ost. (See § 117, p. 96.)

116. Irregular Comparisons.

I. With Vowel Change in the Comparative and Superlative.

Old, elder, eldest (O.E. *eald, ald; yldra, eldra; yldest, eldest*).

Elder and **eldest** are archaic, and are replaced by the more recent forms, **older** and **oldest**.

Cp. O.E. *lang, lengra, lengest; strang, strengra, strengest.* This change is caused by the original vowel before the suffix -s and -st.

Nigh, nigher, nighest, (next).
Near, nearer, nearest.
O.E. *neâh, neh; nyra, nearra; neâhst, nêhst.*
M.E. *negh, nigh; nerre, nere, nerrer; neghest, neyest, next, nest.*

The true representatives of the O.E. forms are *nigh, near, (nigher), next.*

Near is a comparative form, **nearer** is a double comparative.

" The Kny3t asked leeve to ryde by an other way that was
        nere (= nearer)."—*Gest. Rom.*, p. 34.
" You're early up, pray God it be the *near.*"
            Green's *Friar Bacon.* See *Macbeth* II., 4.
Next is a contracted form : $h + s = k + s = x.$ Cp. M E. *hext = highest; coxcomb = cock's comb.*

Late, latter, last.
Late, later, latest.
O.E. *lǽt* (late), *lator, latost, lǽtemest.* In the thirteenth century we find *late, lattre, lattst (latst).*

The distinction between latter and later, latest and last, is quite a modern one.

> " The sea gravel is *lattest* for to drie,
>   And *lattest* may thou therwith edifie."
> > 1420 PALLADIUS, p. 14, ll. 363–4.

Last arises by assimilation out of *lat-st.* Cp.
best = O.E. *bet-st; gospel* = *godspel.*

(Rathe,) rather, (rathest).
O.E. *hræth, hræthra (hrethra), hrathost.*
Rathe in Milton means *early,* as,

> " The *rathe* primrose."—*Lycidas.*
> " The *rather* born lambs."—SPENSER.
> " Late and *rathe.*"—*Piers Plowman* B. p. 132.
> " The *rather* (previous) day."—*Trevisa* III. p. 145.
> " The *rathest* riping grapes."—PALLADIUS, p. 66.

II. FROM OBSOLETE ROOTS.

Good, better, best.
O.E. *gód, betera, (betra,) betest, betst.*
The positive of *better* is **bat** = *good,* which root is
found in O.E. *betan,* ' to make good,' ' amend ;' and
boot, in ' to boot.'

For vowel change in better see elder; for best see last.

Bad ⎫
Evil ⎬ **worse, worst.**
Ill ⎭
O.E. *yfel, wyrsa, wyrrest, wyrst.*
Wor-se, wor-st, are formed from the root *weor,*
bad.

The -se = -re (-er).   Cp. less, O.E. *læs-se.*
In the phrase " the weaker had the *wer* " (Harding), we
have the remnant of the Danish *værre.* Spenser uses *wu* =
worse.

"Was neuer *warre* o moder born."

> *Cursor Mundi*, p. 68, C.

"Was neuer *worre* of moder borne."—*Ib.* F.

Little, less, least.

O.E. *lytel, læssa, læsest, læst.*

The root of *less* and *least* is not the lit of 'little,' but **las**, 'infirm.' Cp. Goth. *lasiws*, 'weak.' The vowel-change is like that in *better*.

Much, more, most.

O.E. *micel, mâra, mæst.*

Much is from *mycel*, through the forms *michel, muchel, mochel.*

Mo-re contains the root *nah*, or *magh*, to be great. Cp. *mai-n*, O.E. *mæg-en.*

O.E. *micel*, M.E. *muchel, muche, moche* = great, large.

"He seide it was not half *mech* inow."—CAPGRAVE.

"A *much* berd" = a great beard.

> *Sir G. and the G. Kniȝt* p. 1.

Mo (*moe*), a shortened form of *more*, is used by Elizabethan writers for *more*. Gill makes *mo* the comparative of *many ;* *more* the comparative of *much*. The Lowland Scotch has a similar distinction.

III. FROM ADVERBIAL ROOTS OF TIME AND PLACE.

Far, farther, farthest.

O.E. *feor, fyrra, fyrrest ;* M.E. *fer, ferre, (ferrer,) ferrest.*

Farther. The correct comparative is farrer = M. E. **ferrer.**

> "þan mon (must) he gyf light
> Als *fer* als þe some dose and *ferrer*."
> > HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* p. 246.

Far (M.E. *ferre*) = 'farther,' occurs in *Winter's Tale*, iv. 4.

The **th** in **farther** has crept in from false analogy with **further**, M.E. *forther, ferther*.

Furth-er (O.E. *furthor*, superlative *furthmest*), is the comparative of **forth**.

"He went ·him *forth* and *forther* soght."—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 4107.

"He went *forth* and *further* sost."—*Ib.* T.

"He went *forth* and *ferder* soght."—*Ib.* G.

E-re, erst.   The root of **e-re** is the adverb *â*, 'ever.'

In O.E. we find *se arra* = the former, *se æftera* (the after) = the latter.

In the thirteenth century we find *erure, erore* = former. O.E. *Misc.*, p. 173.

Af-ter, latter, second (compare *after*-thought), is from *af* = of, off.

Fir-st is the superlative of **fore**.   See § 117, p. 96.

For change of vowel see § 83, p. 63; § 91, p. 72.

Hind-er, from **hind**, as in *behind*.   *Hinderest* occurs in Chaucer.

Inn-er, from **in**.   In the thirteenth century we find *innerest*.

Neth-er, from **neath** in *beneath*.   *Nethereste* is used by Chaucer (*Astrolabe*, p. 4).

Ov-er is from the root **ove** (O.E. *ufe* = up), in *above*.   Wickliffe has *overere* (a double comparative).

As late as the seventeenth century *over* and *upper* are opposed to *nether*.

"The *upper* part . . . shutteth close upon the *nether*."— HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 241.

"Also as it is in the parties of the grete worlde that they beeth so i-ordeyned and isette, that the *over-meste* of the *nether* kynde touche the *nether-meste* of the *over* kynde, as oistres and schellefisch . . . in bestene kind."—*Trevisa* II., p. 181.

Upp-er, from up. *Upperest* and *overest* are found in the fourteenth century.

Utt-er, out-er, from out (O.E. *ut*).

117. **Superlatives in m.**

The O.E. **for-ma** (cp. Lat. *pri-mu-s*) = 'first,' from the root **fore**, survives in **for-m-er** (comparative form with superlative sense), and **for-m-ost.**

"The *forme* yere."—PALLADIUS, p. 71, l. 291.
"The *formast* barn that sco him bare."—*C. Mundi,* C. p. 68.
"The *first* child that ever scho bare."—*Ib.* G.
"Of alle oure *former* fadris that evere were or aren."—*Babees Book,* p. 47.

The suffix **-most** (O.E. *m-est*), contains the superlative endings **-m** and **-est**, as in **in-m-ost, ut-m-ost, up-m-ost, hind-m-ost,** &c.

Further-more (*forther-over* in Chaucer), is simply a compound like *ever-more.*

For the **Indefinite Article** see Numerals, **One.**

For the **Definite Article** see Demonstrative Pronouns.

NUMERALS.

118. **Numerals** may be considered under the three following divisions, **Cardinal, Ordinal,** and **Indefinite** Numerals.

I.—Cardinals.

One = O.E. *an,* M.E. *an, a, on, oon, o, oo.*

The Indefinite Article **an** preserves the original form of the numeral. The **n** falls off before a con-

sonant, and becomes a. (Cp. "*mine* and *my*.") **A =**
one in "all of *a* size," &c.

> "Alle salle thai be *ane* in company,
>   And als *a* saule and *a* body."
>
> HAMPOLE's *P. of C.*, p. 228.

An in seventeenth century writers is used before words be-
ginning with h.

"Yea, I may say of Gardiner, that he had *an* head, if not *an*
    hand, in the death of every eminent Protestant."—
    FULLER, *Church History*, ed. 1845, iv. p. 183.

In the phrase "such *an* one," one must have had its M.E.
pronunciation oon.

None and **No** are the negatives of an and a.
Two, twain (O.E. *twâ, twegen*).
Three (O.E. *thrê, thrêo*).

The root is thri or thar, 'to go beyond,' 'cross.' Cp. Lat.
tres and *trans*.

Four (O.E. *feôwer, fether;* cp. Lat. *quatuor*) has
lost a th.

Five (O.E. *fîf*), has lost a nasal. Cp. Lat. *quinque*,
Gr. πεντε.

Nine (O.E. *nigon*, M.E. *neghen*).

A *g* representing an older *v* has been lost. Cp. Lat.
novem.

Ten (O.E. *tŷn, tên*).

Ten has lost an *h* or *g*. Cp. Gothic *taihun*, Lat.
decem.   The original   form therefore was *tehen*, or
tegen. Cp. **twenty** (O.E. *twen-tig*).

Eleven [O.E. *endlif (endleof)*, *ællefne (ændlefene)*].

e = en = one ; lev = lif (perhaps) = ten.

Twelve (O.E. *twelf*).

twe = twa = two; lve = lif = ten.

Sometimes l = t, and f = g, hence lif = tig, (in O.E. *twentig* = *twen*-ty.)

Some philologists say that lif is from O.E. *læfan*, Goth. *hibjan*, to leave; O.E. *láf*, Goth. *laiba*, a remnant. Hence *eleven* = *one over* ten; *twelve* = *two over* ten.

The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by the suffix -teen (O.E. *týne*) = ten. Those from 20 to 90 are formed by suffixing ty (O.E. *tig*) = ten.

Hund-red. In O.E. we find *hund*, and *hund-teóntig* = 100. **Hund** signified *ten* originally.

Hundred and **thousand** are substantives (originally neuter).

119. **Distributives** express how many at a time, as, **one by one, one and one, by twos, two each,** &c.

By twos. In O.E. the dative *bí twám* would be used.

In the fourteenth century we find *be hundredes* &c. Chaucer, *Astrolabe*, pp. 11, 19, has *by on, by two*, &c. *By* and *by* = one by one; *on by on* is used by Lydgate.

120. In **Multiplicatives** the cardinal number is placed before the greater numeral, as eight hundred.

They may be expressed (1) by the English suffix -fold, as **two-fold**. Cp. O.E. *an-fald* = simple; (2) by the Romance suffix -ple (-ble), **double** (*duple*), **treble** (*triple*).

In M.E. we find -double used as a suffix instead of -fold.

(3) by the word **times**, as "three **times** one are three;" (4) by the adverbial form, as, "**twice** two," "**thrice** four."

Both O.E. *bégen* (masc.), *ba* (neut.). Cp. O.E. *twégen*, two.

In the thirteenth century we find the neuter form (*bey, ba, bo, boo*) more common than the masculine *beyn*.

Both contains the root **bo** (or **ba**), and the suffix **-th.**

In O.E. we find **ba** joined to *twa* (two), as *bâtwâ, butwa, butu.* Cp. our "**both two.**"

In the thirteenth century we find a plural *bathen*, or *bothen*, and a genitive plural *bei-re ;* and in the fourteenth century *bother* and *bothers* are used as genitives.

II. Ordinals.

121. The Ordinals, except first and second, are formed from the cardinal numbers by the suffix **-th**, as four-th, fif-th, six-th, &c.

In O.E. fifth, sixth, and twelfth, were *fifta, sixta,* and *twelfta* In O.E. th had, probably, only the *flat* sound in *bathe,.* and therefore could not follow a sharp mute.

Third = O.E. *thridda*, M.E. *thridde.*
In seventh, ninth, tenth, thirteenth, . . . nineteenth, an n has crept in through Northern forms of Norse origin. Cp. tithe = tenth.
In eigh-th (O.E. *eaht-otha*), a t has disappeared.

First is the superlative of fore, see § 116, p. 95.
Second, Fr. *seconde*, Lat. *secundus*, has replaced the O.E. other.

O.E. other = one of two ; thæt ân = the first ; thæt other = the second. In M.E. these became (1) that oon and that other, (2) the ton (toon, tone), and the tother.

> " Tua pilers thai mad, o tile *the tan,*
>   *The tother* it was o merbul stan."
>   *C. Mundi*, C. p. 96, ll. 1532–3.
> " Two pileres thei made, of til *that oon,*
>   *That other* was of marbul stoon."
>   *Ib.* T.

III. Indefinite Numerals.

122. All. O.E. *eal, eall;* Genitive plural *al-ra,* E.E. *al-re,* M.E. *aller, alder, alther.* See § 111, p. 88.

In the Lowland Scotch dialects we find *allers,* cp. *bothers,* § 120, p. 99.

Many. O.E. *manig, maneg,* is another form of the root *magh* in *more.* See § 116, p. 94.

In O.E. we have *fela, feola* (M.E. *fele*) = many.

Many (O.E. *mænigeo*), a crowd, is a substantive in *some* expressions, as, " a great *many.*"

> " O thou fond *many.*"
> SHAKESPEARE, 2 *Hen. IV.* i. 3.

Few. O.E. *feáwa, feá;* E.E. and M.E. *fa, fo, fon, fone, feawe, few;* O.E. *lyt* = few.

CHAPTER IX.

Pronouns.

123. The **Pronouns** are among the oldest parts of speech, and consequently have undergone much change, so that their original forms are greatly altered. Notwithstanding all this they have preserved more relics of the older inflexions than any other part of speech, as case-endings in **hi-m, he-r, ou-r,** &c.; suffixes marking gender in **it, what,** &c. They also illustrate the substitution of one demonstrative for another, see remarks on **she, they,** &c. p. 109. They show how neuter forms may take the place of the masculine and feminine, as in **this,** &c.; how one case may replace another, as in **you** for **ye**; how the singular may take the place of the plural, as in **you** for **thou**; how relative pronouns are lost and replaced by interrogatives; how new plurals replace older ones in **others, selves**; how impersonal pronouns are formed, as, **somebody,** &c.

124. When a pronoun stands alone, as the subject or object of a verb, it is said to be used substantively; when it modifies a noun it is said to be used adjectively. The Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, Relative, and Indefinite Pronouns have often this double use.

125. The classes of Pronouns are (1) Personal, (2) Demonstrative, (3) Interrogative, (4) Relative, (5) Indefinite.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

I. Substantive.

126. The Personal Pronouns have no distinction of gender. There are two persons, the person who speaks, called the *first* person; the person spoken to, the *second* person.

The person or thing spoken of is sometimes called the *third* person (he, she, it). It is properly a demonstrative pronoun and is inflected like other old demonstratives for gender, as well as for number and case.

He = that man, she = that woman, it = that thing.

In E. E. the definite article or demonstrative the is used instead of he before *that*: "mihti Lauerd is *the* that Juliane on leveth" = mighty Lord is *he* that Juliana believes in.—(*Jul.* p. 65). "Ich am *the* that spec" = I am *he* that spake.—(*Ib.*)

127. THE PRONOUN OF THE FIRST PERSON.

Singular.

Modern English.	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom. I	I, ich, ik	Ic, ich, Ih	Ic
Gen.		min	mīn
Dat. me	me	me	me
Acc. me	me	me	mec, me

Plural.

Nom. we	we	we	we
Gen.		ure	ûser, ûre
Dat. us	us, ous	us	ûs
Acc. us	us, ous	us	ûsic, ûs

128. The Pronoun of the Second Person.

Singular.

Modern English.	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom. thou	thu, thou	thu	thu
Gen.		thin	thin
Dat. thee	the	the	the
Acc. thee	the	the	thec, the

Plural.

Nom. ye, you	ȝe, yhe, ye	ȝe	ge
Gen.		eoure, ewr, ȝure	eower
Dat. you	ȝou, yhou, you, yow	eow, ew, eu	eow
Acc. you	ȝou, yhou, &c.	ew, ow, ȝuw	eowic, eow

There was a dual of the first and second personal pronouns in O.E., which died out before A.D. 1300.

129. Remarks on the pronouns of the first and second person :—

(1) I. The guttural has fallen off, as in many words originally ending in **c** or **ch**.   See § 37, p. 64.

Traces of an older form **Ich**, (which still lives on in the south-west of England), occur in old dramatic writers, as, *chill* = ich will (Shakespeare, *King Lear*).   In early English we find *icham*, I am ; *ichabbe*, I have ; *nullich*, I will not ; *nefdich*, I had not.

> " *Icham*, a gentylman of much noble kynne,
>   Though *Iche* be clad in a knauës skynne."
>   HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure.*

> " *Ich* am an old man."
>   A.D. 1565, AWDELEY, *The Fraternity of Vacabondes*, p. 8.

(2) **Me** (dative) is still in use before impersonal verbs, **me**-thinks, **me**-seems, &c. ; after interjections,

" woe is **me**," " well is **him** ; " to express the indirect object, *to me* or *for me;*

> " Tell *me* the truth," "he plucked *me* ope his doublet."—
>> SHAKESPEARE, *Julius Cæsar*, I. 2.

In M. E. we find more frequent traces of the dative, especially with the adjectives *leof* (*lief*), *loth*, &c. and the verb *to be.*

> " And lever *me* is be pore and trewe."
>> *C. Mundi*, T. l. 4375.

Traces of this idiom occur in the dramatic writers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

The verb *had* often replaces the older *were* (subjunctive).

> " *Me* had rather."—*Rich.* II. iii. 3.
> = M.E. *Me* were lever.
> " *You* were best take my coxcomb."
>> *King Lear*, I. iv.
> " *You* had best."—*Ib.* II. p. 208.
> " *Him* had ben lever to be syke."
>> FABYAN, p. 270.
> " *You* were best hang yourself."
>> BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, II. p. 305.

In the sixteenth century the *nominative* case replaces the *dative*, as, " thou wert better," &c. for " **thee** were better ; " " **we** had best," = " **us** were best." Bacon uses " I think good," for " **me** thinks good."

> " Better *I were* distract."
>> *King Lear*, iv. 7.

We no longer use *mine, thine, ours,* &c. as genitives, but only as possessive pronouns. In M. E. we find a trace of the genitive in such expressions as, " maugre *myn*" (*owres* &c.) = in spite of *me;* (*us*, &c.) " *oure* aller " = all of *us*, &c.

See ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, § 133.

(3) Thou has been replaced by *you*, except in the poetical and religious language.

From the fourteenth down to the seventeenth century, we find *thou* used to express (1) *familiarity* towards friends ; (2) *superiority* towards inferiors ; (3) *contempt* or *anger* towards strangers.

> " We maintain that *thou* from superiors to inferiors is proper,
> as a sign of command ; from equals to equals is pas-
> sable as a note of familiarity ; but from inferiors to
> superiors, if proceeding from ignorance, hath a smack
> of clownishness ; if from affectation, a tone of con
> tempt."—FULLER.

(4) Ye, although the true nominative, has been re-
placed by dative or objective *you.* In the English
Bible, the older use of *ye* as nominative, and *you* as
dative or objective, is always carefully observed.

> " *Ye* have not chosen me, but I have chosen *you.*"
>   *John* xv. 16.

In Sackville, Shakspeare, and Milton, we find *ye*
(in an unaccented position) sometimes used instead
of *you*, in the objective case.[1]

> " Vain pomp and glory of this world, I hate *ye.*"
>   SHAKESPEARE, *Henry VIII.* iii. 2, 365.
> " His wrath, which one day will destroy *ye* both."
>   MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, ii. 734.

130. THE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.—SINGULAR.

Masculine.

Modern English.	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom. he	he, ha, a	he, ha	he
Gen.	his	his	his
Dat. him	him	him	him
Acc. him	him, (hine)	hine, him	hine

---

[1] *You* does not appear as a nominative, in the written lan-
guage before the sixteenth century. In the spoken language it
was perhaps probably pronounced like *ye*, or the *yea* in *yearn.*
Cp. *thank ee* = thank ye = thank you ; *look ee* = look ye.

Feminine.

Modern English.	M.E.	O.E.	E.E.
Nom. she	heo, sco	hi, heo, scæ	heo
Gen.	sche, she	hire, here	hire
Dat. her	hire, hir, here	hire, here	hire
Acc. her	hire (hi, heo)	hi, heo, hire (hise, his)	hi

Neuter.

Nom. it	hit (it)	hit (it)	hit
Gen.	his (hit)	his	his
Dat. it	him (hit, it)	him	him
Acc. it	hit (it)	hit	hit

PLURAL.

Nom. they	hii, thei, thai	hi, heo, thei, thai	hi (hig)
Gen.	heore, here, her, thair, their	hire, heore, here, theᵹre	hira (heora)
Dat. them	hem, hom, theim, thaim, tham	heom, hem, ham, theᵹm	him (heom)
Acc. them	hem, theim, tham	hi, heo, heom, hem, theᵹm (hise, his)	hi (hig)

131. Observations on the Pronoun of the Third Person :—

(1) In Old English there was only one stem, **hi**, from which he, she, it, and their cases were formed. The modern declension contains three stems, **hi, sa, tha**.

(2) **He.** In Middle English we find *ha* and *a = he*. Cp. "quoth *a*."

> "'Rah, tah, tah,' would *a* say; 'bounce,' would *a* say; and away again would *a* go; and again would *a* come."
> —*Hen. IV.* PART II. iii. 2. 303.

(3) **Hi-m** (*dat.*) contains a real dative suffix m. Cp. *who-m.*

(4) **Hi-m** (*acc.*). The old accusative was hi-ne, which began to go out of use in the thirteenth century, and by Chaucer's time had wholly disappeared in the Midland dialect.

> "Heo *hine* bitauhte knyhtes þat duden *him* muchele schonde ;
> þe knyhtes þet *hine* ledden bitauhten *him* þe rode."
> ↵They delivered him to knights that did to him great shame ;
> The knights that led him delivered to him the cross.
>   *O.E. Miscell.* p. 49.

(5) **She** replaces the older **heo**, which lasted as late as 1387. It is an altered form of the Old English feminine definite article *seo*, or *sio* (Icelandic *sú*).

> "*Heo* nuste hwat *heo* mende, *heo* wes of wytte poure."
> = She knew not what she meant, she was of wit poor.
>   *O.E. Miscell.* p. 85.

(6) **He-r** (*dat.*) contains a dative (fem.) suffix -r, (-re).

He-r, (*acc.*) originally dative, has replaced the old accusative *hi* or *heo*.

> "Heo cuþeþ *hi* well sone."
> = She will show herself very soon.
>   *O.E. Miscell.* p. 118.
> "He ber *heo* on his schuldre."
> = He bore her on his shoulder.
>   *Ib.* p. 49.

(7) **It** has lost an initial *h*. The final t was originally a suffix of the neuter gender, as in *tha-t*, *wha-t.* Cp. Latin *i-d, illu-d, istu-d, quo-d.*

It is often employed in O.E. where we use **there.**

> " It es na tung may tell."
>> *C. Mundi*, p. 84.
> " It *ben* the deueles disoures."
>> *Piers Plowman*, B. vi. 56.

(8) **It** (*dat.*) has replaced the true form **him.**

(9) **They** is the old nominative plural of the definite article. It replaced the older form *hi* or *heo* in the beginning of the thirteenth century in the dialects of the North and North East of England, under the forms þei, þess, þai.

> " Ic nele neuer þe vorsake, and so *hi* seyden alle.
> þo *hi* hedden al þis iherd *heo* were ful sori."
> = I will never forsake thee, and so they said all ;
> When they had heard all this they were full sorry.
>> *O.E. Miscell.* p. 41.

(10) **The-m** (*dat.*) is the dative plural of the old definite article and replaces the demonstrative **hem.**

The-m (*acc.*) was originally a dative and replaced the older forms *hi, heo, hem ;* the true accusative is *they,* O.E. *thâ.*

> " So ha sente *hi* into his wynyarde."
> = So he sent them into his vineyard.
>> *O.E. Miscell.* p. 33.
> " And [he wule] makie *heo* unfere."
> = And he will make them unbold.
>> *Ib.* p. 75.

" And right anoon *thay* token *here* way to the court of Melibe, and token with *hem* some of *here* trewe frendes."— CHAUCER, ed. Morris, iii. p. 193.

In the dramatists, 'em is not a corruption of *them,* but of the older *hem.*

(11) The following table shows the origin of *she,*
they, &c. :—

DEFINITE ARTICLE.—SINGULAR.

Nom.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
	se (E.E. the)[1]	seo, sio	thæt
	|	|	|
	the	she	that

PLURAL.

Nom.	Poss.	Dat.	Acc.
thâ	thâra	thâm	thâ
|	|	|	|
they	their	them	

Obs. The following examples show the demonstrative cha-
racter of *they* = those (nom. and acc.).

> " For *they* carles garre syke a dinne."
> > WARNER, *Albion's England,* p. 118.
> " And *tha* bandes of fyre salle never slake."
> = And those bonds of fire shall never slack.
> > HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 7177.
> " But *thai* prophetis so thyn ar sawin."
> = But those prophets are so thinly sown.
> > BARBOUR, *The Bruce,* iv. 685.
> " For he had drede of *thai* thre men."
> = For he had dread of those three men.
> > *Ib.* vii. 185.
> " *Thai* thre tratouris he has slane."
> = Those three traitors has he slain.
> > *Ib.* vii. 222.

---

[1] In O.E. *the* was only used as an indeclinable relative. In
E.E. *the* (masc.) and *theo* (fem.) were used as demonstrative
pronouns instead of O.E. *se* and *seo.*

" Ane of *thai* That com for to sla the kyng."
= One of those that came to slay the king.

<div align="right">BARBOUR, *The Bruce*, vii. 212.</div>

Tho is another form of *tha* and *thei*.

" þo weore þeos—
þat weoren in þe pynen of helle."
= They were those
That were in the pains of hell.

<div align="right">*O. E. Miscell.* p. 232.</div>

" Yf ye wille after this do to me so
As ye have done, ye shalle have alle *tho.*" (*them*=coins)

<div align="right">OCCLEVE, *De Reg.* 166.</div>

" And *tho* that cannot (beat their husbands), they will
never let
Their tongues cease.". . . . . .

<div align="right">HAWES, *P. of Pl.* p. 136.</div>

II. Reflexive Pronouns.

132. The simple personal pronouns **me, thee,** &c.
may be used reflexively, as, " I repent **me,**" " get
thee hence," " sit **you** down."

The word **self** is usually added to them.

Singular.—**Myself, thyself, yourself, him-
self, herself, itself.**

Plural.—**Ourselves, yourselves, themselves.**

Self (O.E. silf), was at first declined as an adjec-
tive along with the personal pronouns ; nom. *ic silfa,*
gen. *mín silfes ;* dat. *me silfum ;* acc. *me silfne.*

Between the nominative of the personal pronoun
and the word **silf,** the dative case of the pronoun
was inserted, as : *ic me silf* = I myself ; *thu the silf*
= thou thyself ; *he him silf* = he himself ; *we us
silfe* = we ourselves ; *ye éow silfe* = you yourselves ;

hi him selfe = they themselves. So we could say
God silf and *God him silf.*

These forms are emphatic rather than reflexive.

In the thirteenth century we find the *possessive* pro-
noun replacing the *dative*, as, *I mi self, thu thi self,*
&c. instead of *I me self, thu the self.* Cp. himself,
themselves, itself, oneself.

Probably **self** had already come to be considered
a noun ; it certainly was often so treated from the four-
teenth century downwards :—

> " As *thi self* likyth."
>
>> CHAUCER, *Astrolabe,* pt. I. sec. 21.
>
> "*Myself* hath been the whip."
>
>> CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 5757.
>
> "Thy manner is to muse and [to] devyse,
> So that sometime *myself* may carry me
> *Myself* knoweth not where ; and I assure ye
> So hath *myself* done now."
>
>> HEYWOOD, *The Play of the Wether.*

Cp. the use of "*myself,*" &c. for "I myself," &c.

When **self** was fully established as a noun, it
dropped its old plural **e**, and took **s**, as *ourselves,*
&c.

For some time it was without a plural, as *ourself,*
themself, &c.

One's self, (or more properly **oneself**), is quite
a modern form. In Elizabethan English we find
a man's self = *one's self.*

In O.E., ana (the nom. of *án,* one,) was used like self.
In M.E., we find one used for *self* with the possessive pronoun,
as, "be myne *one,*" by myself (*Morte Arthure,* ed. Brock, p.
125) = "by me *one.*"

An old meaning of **self** was *same.*   Cp. "the *self* truth*"* (Becon), and "self-same."

> "The *same self* time."
>
>> BALE's *Works,* Park. Soc. p. 23.

> "For other ruffians, as their fancies wrought,
> With *self-same* hand, *self* reasons, and *self* right,
> Would shark on you."
>
>> SIR T. MORE, *ed.* Shak. Soc. p. 27.

III. Adjective Pronouns.

133. The **Adjective** Pronouns, sometimes called **Possessive** Pronouns, were formed from the genitive case of the personal pronouns, and were declined like ordinary adjectives.

In modern English the possessive pronouns, though only used adjectively, are identical in form with the old genitives of the personal pronouns.

Sing.—**Mine, my; thine, thy; his, hers, its.**

Plural.—**Our, ours; your, yours; their, theirs.**

Mine, my; thine, thy. The original forms were **mine** and **thine** (O.E. *mín, thín*). The final **e** is no inflexion, and only marks the length of the preceding vowel.

The **-n** in *mine* and *thine* is an old genitive suffix.

My and **thy** are formed from **mine** and **thine** by the loss of *n*, as **no** from **none**, **a** from **an.**

Mine and **thine** are occasionally used before a noun beginning with a vowel, or **h**; but this usage is confined to poetry and the *solemn* style.

ʻ It is very common in the Bible, and in our old dramatists :—

> " Give every man *thine* ear, but few *thy* voice."
>> *Hamlet,* I. 3.
>
> " Conduct me to *mine* host."— *Macbeth,* I. 7.

Sometimes *mine* and *thine* are used when they follow the substantive, as,

> " *Lordyng myne.*"—*Gest. Rom.* p. 32.
> " Master *mine.*"
>> *Merry Wives of Windsor,* i. I. 163.

Hi-s is a true genitive of the root hi.

He-r (O.E. hi-re), contains a genitive suffix fem. -r.

Its (O.E. *his*). This is quite a modern form, not much older than the end of the sixteenth century. It does not occur in the Bible; it was not used by Spenser, rarely by Shakspeare and Bacon, but is more frequently employed by Milton, and had quite established itself in Dryden's time as the regular form. The true genitive of *it* is *his.*

> " Put up again thy sword into *his* place."—*Matt.* xxvi. 52.
> " Learning has *his* infancy, when *it* is but beginning, and almost childish ; then *his* youth, when *it* is luxuriant and juvenile ; then *his* strength of years, when *it* is solid and reduced ; and lastly, *his* old age, when it waxeth dry and exhaust."—BACON, *Essays,* 58.

In the fourteenth century we find hit = its. This form was kept up as late as the seventeenth century.

> " Of *it* own accord."—*Levit.* xxv. 5.
> " *It* knighthood shall do worse....it shall fright all *it* friends."
>> BEN JONSON, *The Silent Woman,* ii. 3.

The **own** = *its own,* occurs as early as the fourteenth century, and was in use in the sixteenth century.

> "And albeit their trumpery be built up, and reared as high as the sky, yea even in a moment, and as it were of *the own* self, falleth it down again."—*Translation of Jewel,* ed. Jelf, p. 153.

I

Ou-r, you-r (O.E. *ur-e, eow-er.*)

These forms contain a suffix -r, which belongs also to the genitive plural of adjectives. See note on *Alderliefest,* § 111, p. 88.

Thei-r has this genitival suffix -r, which also appears in O.E. *hi-re, heo-re*; M.E. *he-r*. See table, p. 106.

IV. Independent or Absolute Possessives.

134. Mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs, are used without a following noun.

> " Be *thine* despair and sceptred care ;
> To triumph and to die are *mine.*"
>
> GRAY, *The Bard.*

Ours, yours, theirs are *double genitives,* containing a genitive plural suffix -r + a singular suffix -s. **Hers** is also a double genitive.

These genitives in -s are not found in the oldest English ; they made their first appearance in the Northern dialects of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, and are due to Scandinavian influence. Cp. Swed. (old style) *mins, dins,* = mine, thine ; *värs* = ours, *ers,* = yours.

The more ordinary forms in the Southern dialects were *hire, hir* (hers), *oure, our* (ours), &c. Sometimes we find *ouren* = ours, *heren* = theirs.

II.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

135. The Demonstratives are **the, that, this, such, so, same, yon, (yond, yonder).**

The (usually called the **Definite Article**), was formerly declined like an adjective for number, gender, and case ; it is now indeclinable.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom.	the	the	se
Gen.		the-s, tha-s	thæ-s
Dat.	the	tha-n, the-n	tha-m, thæ-m
Acc.	the	tha-n, tho-n	tha-ne
Inst.	the	the	thî, thê

Feminine.

	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom.	the	theo, the	seo
Gen.		the-re, tha-re	thæ-re
Dat.	the	the-re, tha-re	thæ-re
Acc.	the	tha, theo, tho, th··	

Neuter.

| Nom. ⎫
Acc. ⎭ | the, that | the-t, tha-t | thæ-t |
| Gen. ⎫
Dat. ⎭ | | *like the masculine.* | |

PLURAL.

	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom.	the, tho, tha, thai	tha, theo, the	thâ
Gen.	the	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thâ-ra, thæ-ra
Dat.	the, (tha, tho, thai)	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thâ-m, thæ-m
Acc.		tha, tho, the	thâ

In the second period the article is flexionless in Northern writers.

The old form *tho,* the plural of *the,* is used as late as Warner's time. *They* is occasionally found in Tudor English as the plural of *the.*

The, before comparatives, as, "*the* more *the* merrier," is a remnant of the old instrumental case *thî.* Cp. O.E. *thî mare* = Lat. *eo magis.* It must be parsed as an adverb when used in this way.

136. That was originally the neuter of **the.** In Northern dialects it replaced the demonstrative *thilk*, and was used before nouns of all genders. Its plurals were (1) **tho** (or *tha*) the pl. of the def. art. ; (2) **thos** (or *thas*) the old plural of **this.**

The **t** in **that** is the old neuter suffix. Cp. **it, what.**

Those (O.E. *thâs*), was at first the plural of **this.** It had established itself, as early as the middle of the fourteenth century, as the plural of *that.*

137. This was originally neuter. As late as 1387 we find **thes** (masc.), **theos** (fem.), **this** (neuter), Lat. *hic, hæc, hoc.*

This is more emphatic than *the*, and was originally equivalent to *the-the.* Cp. Fr. *ce-ci, ce-la.*

These (O.E. *thæs, thâs,* E.E. *thas, theos, thos, thes, these,* M.E. *thes, thees, thise, these*).

The final **e** in *these,* marks the length of the preceding vowel; it is not an inflexion.

The form *these* in M.E. may have been a new plural formed from *this,* and therefore commonly spelt *thise.*

This and **that** sometimes replace the **former** and the **latter** (O.E. *se ærra* and *se æftera*) see § 116, p. 95.

This usually refers to the *latter* of two things mentioned, **that** to the *former.*

> " Two principles in human nature reign ;
>   Self-love to urge, and Reason to restrain ;
>   Nor *this* a good, nor *that* a bad we call."
>
> POPE, *Essay on Man,* ii. 2.

138. Such (O.E. *swilc*, E.E. *swilch*, M.E. *swilk*, *swich*, *swuch*, *sich*, *such*) is a compound of *so* (O.E. *swâ*), and *like* (O.E. *lîc*).   **Such like** is pleonastic.

We find compounds of *such* in *some such* and *none such*.

139. Thilk (O. E. *thylc*) = the like. Cp. Lat. *ta-lis*.

The like is used often as a substitute for the older *thilk*.

140. Ilk (O. E. *ylc*) = that like, same.

141. Otherlike and other the like are found in the seven-teenth century.

> " Chaffe, straw and *otherlike* mullocke."
>   HOLLAND, *Pliny*, 601.

142. So (O.E. *swâ*), is often used as a substitute, for *such*.

> " I am wiser than *so* " *i.e.* a baby.—FORD.

143. Same (M.E. *same*, Gothic *sama*). In the oldest period *same* is a conjunction, as *swa same swa* = the same as *; sam—sam* = whether—or.

Same is joined to the, this, that, and self (*e.g.* **self-same.** See § 132, p. 112).

144. Yon, yond, yonder (O.E. *geon*, Goth. *jains*, Ger. *jener*) = that, *ille.*

> " Near *yonder* copse."
>   GOLDSMITH, *Deserted Village*, 1. 136.
> " Beside *yon* straggling fence."—*Ib.* l. 193.

Yon is a derivative from the demonstrative root *ge* (or *ja*).

In O.E. geon = *ille ;* geond=*illic* and *trans.*

Yonder (adv.) is in Gothic *jaindre.*

In M.E. we find *yon a* like *such a, each a,* &c., from which probably has arisen *yond-er.*

The Scotch still use *yon* substantively.

> " *Yonder's* a bad man."
>   BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, II. p. 400.
> " *Yon* er theves."—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 4890.
> " *yonder* ar theves."—*Ib.* F.
> " *yondir* be theves."—*Ib.* T.

> " Bote take we him ute of *son* den,
>   And selle we him to *sone* chapmen."
>   *C. Mundi*, G. ll. 4185–6.

" Take we him out of *sonder* den
    And sel him forth to *sone* chapmen."—*Ib.* F.

" Take we him out of *that* den
    And selle we him to *those* chapmen."—*Ib.* T.

III.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

145. The **Interrogatives** are **who, which, what, whether,** with their indefinite compounds **whoever, whatever, whichever.**

146. Who (masc. and fem.) is only used of persons. Its neuter is **what.**

	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	O.E. Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	who	what	hwâ	hwæt
Gen.	whose	whose	hwæs	hwæs
Dat.	whom	what	hwam, hwæm	hwæm
Acc.	whom	what	hwone, hwæne	hwæt
Inst.		[why]	hwî	hwî

E.E.		M.E.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. hwa, wha, wa	hwat, hwet, what, whæt	wha, hwo, wo, ho, quo	what, wat, huet
Gen. hwas, whas, was	*as masc.*	whas, whos, wos, hos	*as masc.*
Dat. hwam, whan, hwam, wham	*as masc.*	whom, wham, wom	*as masc.*
Acc. hwan, wan, hwam, wham	hwat, whæt, what	whom, wan, won	what, wat, huet

Who-se was originally of all genders. It can be used absolutely, as, " *whose* is the crime?" The **s** in *whose* is a genitive suffix, as in *hi-s.*

Who-m is a dative like **hi-m.** It is now also accusative, the older acc. *hwone* having been replaced by it in the thirteenth century.

147. Wha-t was originally neuter (like *tha-t*), and never masc. or fem. It got its present usage as early as the beginning of the thirteenth century in the Northern dialects.

What for = *what sort of.*

> " *What's* he *for* a man."
>
> > PEELE, ed. Dyce, p. 383.

148. Whe-ther (O.E. *hwæther*, M.E. *whether*, *wher*), which of the two.

> "God cupid, or the keeper, I know not *whether*,
> Unto my cost and charges brought you thither."
> > BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight
> > of the Burning Pestle,* i. 2.

> " *Whether* of them twain did the will of his father."
> > *Matt.* xxi. 31.

For the suffix *-ther*, see *Three* § 118, p. 97.

We find in the seventeenth century *whether-so-ever* ; in the fourteenth *whether-so, whether-ever.*

149. Which (O.E. *hwilc*; E.E. *whulc, whulch, wuch*; M.E. *wich, wuch, which, whilk*) contains the **wh** of *who, what,* and *-lc* = O.E. *lîc* = like. Cp. *qua-lis.*

> " Tele us *hwuch* is helle."—*O.E. Hom.* I. p. 249.
> = Tell us *what* hell is *like.*
> " Moyses seide, Lord *wuch* is þi face, let me hit iseo."—*Vernon MS.*

IV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

150. The **Relative** Pronouns are **who, which, what, that, as.**

In the oldest period, **who, which,** and **what,** were not relative, but interrogative pronouns; **whose,** and **whom,** were established as relatives as early as the thirteenth century; but **who** was much later in getting a relative force, and did not come into common use before the end of the sixteenth century.

151. **Who,** as a relative, is not recognized by Ben Jonson, who speaks of "one relative *which.*"

In 'Palladius on *Husbondrie,*' A.D. 1420, we find *who* used as a relative with a neuter antecedent.

Who (= he who, whoever) replaced the E.E. *the the,* or *the that* = he that.

 "*Who* steals my purse steals trash."—*Othello,* iii. 3. 15.
In this sense who = *quisquis,* is an indefinite pronoun.
In M.E. the is sometimes joined to **whose** and **whom.**
Who (and its cases) are often followed in M.E. by **that.**

152. **Which** at present relates only to neuter antecedents, but this is comparatively a modern restriction.

 "Our Father *which* art in heaven."

In M.E. which is frequently joined to the, that, as :—*the which, which that, which as,* &c.

153. **That,** originally the *neuter singular* relative, now agrees with singular and plural antecedents of all genders.

That, during the twelfth century, began to supply the place of the *indeclinable* relative **the,** and in the fourteenth century it was the ordinary, though not the

only relative. In the sixteenth century, **which** often supplied its place; and in the seventeenth century, **who** was frequently employed instead of it. At a later period (Addison's time), **that** had again come into fashion, and had almost driven **who** and **which** out of use.

That (O.E. *ðætte* = *ðæt þe*), is sometimes used in the sense of **that which**, or **what**.

"We speak *that* we do know, and testify *that* we have seen."
St. John, iii. 11.

154. What = *that which*, refers to singular and neuter antecedents. Its true genitive is **whose**.

"Nebuchadnezzar, the king, made an *image* of gold, *whose* height was threescore cubits." — *Dan.* iii. 1. See Milton's *Par. Lost.* Bk. i. l. 2.

What that, that what, what as, are archaic compounds.

155. Who-so, what-so, who-so-ever, what-so-ever, which-so-ever, are indefinite, like the Latin *quisquis, quicunque.*

O.E. swâ hwa swâ = E.E. *wha-swa, wha-se,* M.E. *who-so;* O.E. swâ hwylc swâ = which so, whichsoever.

In the sixteenth century we often find **what-som-ever** = M.E. *what-sum-ever; sum = as, so* is Danish.

"To *quat* contre *sum* that thou wend."
C. Mundi, C. l. 1149.

"To *quat* contre *so* thu wend."
Ib. G.

156. Who-ever, what-ever, which-ever, are relative and interrogative. They do not occur in the oldest English.

157. As (O.E. *eall-swa;* E.E. *alswa, alse;* M.E. *ase, as, als, also*), has a relative force after *such, same, that.*

Such — as = O.E. *swylc — swylc = such — such.* E.E. *swilc — als.*

V.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

158. The Indefinite Pronouns are **who, what, some, one, any, none, no, aught, naught, each, every, either, neither, other, else, enough, sundry, certain, several.**

159. Who = *anyone, some one,* has an indefinite sense in some old expressions :

> " Not as *who* saith by authority,
>   But by the way of intreaty."
> > *The 4 P.P.* in *O.E. Plays,* ed. Hazlitt, I. 373.
> " As *who* should say."—*Macbeth,* III. 6.

160. What is indefinite in

> " I'll tell you *what* now of the devil."
> > MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr,* iii. 3.

What not, what else (M.E. *elles what*).

In O.E. *hwa, â-hwa* = anyone, *hwæt, â-hwæt* = *aught, any-thing.* In the thirteenth century we find what treated as a substantive in *an hwat = one thing,* which gave rise to E.E. *sum-what, other-what ;* M.E. *much-what, little-what, many-what,* modern English **somewhat.**

There may have been some confusion between *aught, wight ;* and *whit.* See § 164, p. 125.
> " A strawnge *watt* " (= wight.)
> > *Coventry Mysteries,* p. 294
> " I am a fulle gret *watt.*"—*Townley Mysteries,* p. 8.
> " Much *what.*"—*Sir Gawayne,* ed. Morris, p. 41.
> " A little *what.*"—WICLIFFE, *John* vi. 7 ; and
> > SPENSER, *Shep. Cal.* (July).

161. Some (O.E. *sum ;* M.E. *som, some,* aliquis, quelque), is both singular and plural, but is mostly used before plural nouns. It has the force of the indefinite *a, a certain, some one ;* **some—some** = *one—another, some—others.*

Other-some = *some others,* is used by Shake-speare in the *Comedy of Errors,* iii. 2.

> 'Framing unto some unwholesome sores plaisters, and applying *other some* where no sore is."—HOOKER, v. 1. 1.

In O.E. and E.E. *sum* was declined like the strong declension of adjectives, see § 112, p. 89.

In M.E. we find pl. *sume, summe, some.*

As late as the fourteenth century we find *some* used in apposition with a pronoun or noun, as *sume we* = some of us.

For *some* = *an,* cp. the following versions of the same line:—

" Thar-bi groues *sum* apell tre."—*C. Mundi,* C. L 2877.

" Tharby grows *an* appel tre."—*Ib.* T.

Compounds of some are somebody, some-thing, someone, somewhat.

Somebody seems to have got into the language through the use of **body for wight** (person).

> "*A bodye* thynketh *himselfe* well emended in his substaunce and ryches, to whom hath happened some good goubbe of money."—ERASMUS, *Apophthegms,* englished by Udall, ed. 1542, p. 14*a.*

No body occurs in *Piers Plowman.*—B. xvi. 83, p. 292.

Something has in a great measure replaced *somewhat.* This usage is as early as the thirteenth century.

Some one arose in the early part of the fourteenth century, and replaced *sum man ;* it is also used where in M.E. *oon, one* = *some one* was employed.

All and some (M.E. *al and sum*) = all and one, all and singular, is used by Dryden.

> "— you must march both *all and some*."—PEELE, *Edw. I.*

In the sixteenth century it often appears as *whole and some, all or some.*

Sometimes we meet with a redundancy of indefinites :—

> " And the nature of all creatures is contained in *some certain one* place."—BECON, *Prayers,* p. 273.

> "Thus saith Pope Alexander, Gregory, John Clement, or *some such other like.*"—PILKINGTON, p. 20.

162. **One** (O.E. *án*, M.E. *on, oon*) is the numeral **one** with extended usage. It has a genitive **one's**, and a plural **ones**.

In the O.E. and M.E. *one* was declined according to the strong declension. See § 112, p. 89.

It has various usages :—

(1) In "*one* says" it replaces the O.E. *man*, M.E. *me* (Ger. *man*, Fr. *on*). This use is as early as the fifteenth century.

(2) It has an indefinite sense like the Latin *quidam*, Greek τις, especially before proper nouns, as, "*one* Simon a tanner" (*Acts* ix. 43). This use is found in E.E. See *St. Juliana*, p. 5.

"*One* in a certain place testifieth."—*Heb.* ii. 6.

"Also *oon* told hym that oon of his frendes hadde ispoke euel by hym."—*Trevisa*, iii. 317.

See *Piers Plowman*, B. xx. 157, 161, p. 374.

(3) It is equivalent to *some one*, see *King Lear*, i. 3.

(4) It is also used as a noun = *person, thing* (M.E. *wight, thing*). This usage is found in the fourteenth century.

(5) It is used instead of repeating the noun.

(6) **The one** = *the first.* See § 121, p. 99.

(7) **One** = *the same*, as, "it's all *one;*" "*one* and the same."

For one we sometimes use *a man, they, you, people.*

In M.E. me = *men*, is used for *one* (Fr. *on*); but with a *singular* verb.

"The vyne also *thai* sayen hath that nature,
That vynes yf *me* brenne, or white or blake,
And kest hem into wyne, *me* may be sure
The wyne coloure after the vynes take."

PALLADIUS, *Husbondrie*, p. 200.

The expression **as one that** ⇒ M.E. *as he that; E.E. as the that; as a wiht that; as thing that.*—See *Juliana*, pp. 4, 5, 8, 20, 21.

163. **None, no** = O.E. *nân* = *ne ân* = *not one.*

No is formed from **none** by the dropping off of **ne**. (Cp. **my** and **mine**). **None** is used absolutely, that is, without a following noun : " I have none."

In **none other** (*Acts* iv. 12 ; *Deut.* v. 7), we have the M.E. use of *none* for *no* before a vowel.

Other-noon (Cp. *other some*) occurs in M.E.

No one = *not one*, is tautological, (being for *ne one one*) but it evidently replaces M.E. *no man, no wight*. Compounds of **no** are **nothing, nobody**. Ford . has **nobody's else** for **nobody else's**.

164. **Aught** = **anything** (O.E. *âwiht, âwuht, auht, aht*). It contains the prefix *â* = ever, aye; and the root *ught* = *wight, whit* (O.E. *wiht, wuht, uht*), creature, thing, something.

Naught (O.E. *nâwiht, nawuht, nauht, naht, neaht, noht*), and **not** (M.E. *nat, not, noght*), are negative forms of **aught**.

Awhit is another form of *aught*. Cp. *anywhit, everywhit*. As *not* = *nowhit* = *naught, not a whit* is pleonastic.

That **nawight** = *noght* = *not* is seen from the following versions of the same line.

" Sco said, ne herd yee *na wight* hou. '—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 4396.

" Scho said, ne herd ȝe *noght* how."—*Ib.* G.

" She seide, herde ȝe *not* how."—*Ib.* T.

In the following passages *nawight* is replaced by *nathing*, nothing.

"Ne sal thou *nawight* thar-wit win."—*Ib.* C. l. 919.

" Ne sal thou *naþinge* thar-with wyn."—*Ib.* F.

Whit = *aught*, in

"   " The devil have they *whit* else."

THERSITES, *O.E. Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, 1. p. 428.

165. Any (O.E. *ǽn-ig;* E.E. *ǽni, ǽi, ei;* M.E. *eny, ony, any* = ullus), has an adjective form like *dirt-y,* and the stem is *an* = *one.* The negative of **any is none.** In O.E. and E.E. we had a true negative, **nǽnig** = *nullus.*

In O.E. **any** was declined like *one.* A plural in -e was in use in the fourteenth century.

The genitive **anies** = *anyone's* occurs in Warner's *Albion's England,* p. 200.

Compounds of **any** are anyone, anybody (M.E. *any wight, any persone, any man*), anything.

166. Each = O.E. *æ-lc* = *ǽ-ge-lic;* E.E. *elc, elch, euch;* M.E. *uch, ych, ech, ilk.*

Each is a compound of **á,** *ever,* and **lîc,** *like.* (Cp. *which, such,* &c.). In E.E. and M.E. **each** was followed by **an, a, on,** (= *one*). This use has survived in **each one.**

Each other besides being equivalent to *each the other,* see § 170, signifies *every second, each alternate.*

> " Living and dying, *each other* day."
>
> HOLLAND'S *Pliny,* p. 2.

167. Every (E.E. *ǽver-ælc;* M.E. *ever-ich, ever-ilk*), is a compound of **ever** and **each.** It does not exist in the oldest period.

Every, as late as the seventeenth century, had a substantive use as in the older periods.

" *Every* of your wishes."—*Antony and Cleop.* ii. 2.

" *Everich* of hem his lyf left for a wed."

> LYDGATE, *The Storie of Thebes,* ii. l. 1186.

M.E. *evrichon, everilkan,* (cp. *each one*) survives in everyone.

Everybody and *everything* are recent formations.

Ever-any existed in the thirteenth century, and is used by Fabyan (ed. Ellis, p. 251), *evereither* is used by Pecock. (*Spec. Eng.* ed. Skeat. p ςς. l. 102.)

Ever-each is like *no one*, a pleonastic expression, which arose when the origin of *every* was forgotten.—(*See* Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 601).

168. Either (O.E. *æghwæther, ægther, â-hwæther, âwther;* E.E. *æither, aither, either, other, owther;* M.E. *either, ayther, other, outher*), is an old comparative form (see § 148) containing the prefix â, *ever*, and the suffix, -ther. It signifies "any one of two." Its negative is **neither.**

Either has a possessive form **either's.**

> "Then *either's* love was *either's* life."
> > WARNER, *Albion's England*, p. 57.
> "*Eytheres* will."—*Piers Plowman*, B. xiii. 348, p. 228.

169. Other (O.E. *ô-ther* = one of two, second and other), contains the root ô = one, and the comparative suffix -ther. (*See* § 121, p. 99).

Other originally followed the strong declension of adjectives. Its plural was *othre;* when the final e became silent, a new plural *others* was formed.

Other for some time was used as a plural, both in M.E. and in the seventeenth century. Cp. *other some = some others.*

Another, any other, none other, some other, are forms that arose in the thirteenth century.

Other the like = M.E. otherlike, occurs in Hooker, v. 1. 3.

170. One another, each other, are sometimes called reciprocal pronouns, but they are not compounds. They love *one another;* they love *each other* = they love—*one* (loves) *another;* they love—*each* (loves) the *other.*

171. Else (O.E. *elles*), is the genitive case of an old pronominal root el = *other* (Cp. Lat. *alius*).

We find its pronominal character kept up in what else, O.E. *elles hwæt.* Warner (*Albion's England*, p. 178) has *elswhat,* ep. aught else, nothing else.

Becon constantly uses *what other thing* for *what else.* So in Hooker, v. xx. 6.

" For *what else* is the Law but the Gospel foreshewed ? "

" *What other* the Gospel than the Law fulfilled ? "

Other *where* = *elsewhere* in Hooker, v. xi. 12.

Else is used substantively in the sense of *something else* in the following passage.

" What's that she mumbles? The devil's paternoster ? Would
    it were *else.*"—FORD, *Witch of Edmonton,* ii. 1.

172. Some demonstratives become indefinites. Cp. *this and that ; such and such ;* he knew not *which was which ; ilk* and *ilk* in the Ayenbite, p. 54 ; *he* and *he* = one — another.—*Pier's Plowman,* B. p. 226 ; CHAUCER's *Knight's Tale,* ll. 1756—1761.

" *This* would, I have, and *that,* and then I desire to be *such*
    and *such.*"—(Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 185.

"*One* takes upon him temperance, holiness, *another* austerity,
    a *third* an affected kind of simplicity, when, as indeed
    he, and *he,* and *he,* and the rest are ' hypocrites, ambi-
    dexters,' outsides, so many turning pictures, a lion on
    the one side, a lamb on the other."—*Ib.* p. 34.

" In with the polax preseth *he* and *he ;*
    By hynde the maste begynneth *he* to fle."
                                CHAUCER, ed. Morris, v. p. 296.

" Then was I dubde as true precise,
    And faithful by and by ;
    And none was compted hoate enough
        Save *he* and *he* and I.—DRANT's *Horace.*

See Palladius, *Husbondrie,* p. 126, l. 610; Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 8.

173. Enough (O.E. *genôh,* E.E. *inoh, inoʒ.* M.E. *inough, ynough, anough, inow, enogh.*)

We sometimes meet with the plural, *enow, anow,* (M.E. *inowe, anowe*).

174. The words sundry, divers, certain, and several, have acquired more or less the force of indefinite pronouns.

" They had their *several* (= separate) partitions for heathèn
    nations, their *several* for the people ..., their *several* for
    men, their *several* for women, their *several* for the
    priests, and for the high priest alone their *several.*"—
    HOOKER, v. xiv. 1.

CHAPTER X.

THE VERB.

175. Verbs may be classified, according to their meaning, as **Transitive** and **Intransitive**.

Transitive verbs express an action which does not terminate in the agent, but passes over to an object; as, "he *learns* his lesson." **Transitive** verbs are used **reflexively**; as, "*he killed himself;*" "*sit thee down,*" and **reciprocally**, as "*they helped one another.*"

Intransitive verbs express an action that is confined to the agent, as, "corn *grows.*" Some intransitive verbs, by the addition of a preposition, become transitive; as, "the man *laughs at* the boy;" "he *talks of* himself." Sometimes verbs compounded with prepositions become transitive; cp. *come* and *overcome, speak* and *bespeak, go* and *forgo,* &c.

176. Some intransitive verbs have a causative form which is always transitive, as,

Intrans.	Trans.
fall	fell
sit	set
rise	raise

As we are not now able to form new causative verbs, we are often obliged to give a *causative meaning* to an intransitive verb, and it then takes an object; as, "*he flies his kite*," "*he ran the knife into his leg*." Intransitive verbs may take a noun of kindred meaning as object; as, "*he lived a good life*," "*he died a horrible death*."

177. Verbs used with the third person only are called **Impersonal** verbs, as "*me thinks*," "*it rains*," &c. These verbs were much more numerous in the older stages of the language. (See Syntax of **Impersonal Verbs**).

178. The verb affirms action, or existence of a subject under certain conditions or relations, called **voice, mood, tense, number, person.** In some languages the verbal root undergoes a change of form to express these various relations.

Voice.

179. Transitive verbs have two voices, the **Active** and the **Passive.** When a verb is used in the **Active Voice,** the subject of the verb represents the actor, or agent; as, "*the lion killed the elephant.*" A verb is said to be in the **Passive Voice** where the subject denotes the object to which the action is directed; as, "*the elephant was killed by the lion.*"

In English we have no inflexions for the passive voice, as in Latin and Greek, but express the same notion by means of the passive participle and the verb *to be.* We have a very good substitute for the

passive form in the use of an indefinite pronoun for the subject of the verb; as, "*somebody killed the boy*" = the boy was killed; "*one knows not how it happened*," = it is not known how it happened; "*they say*," = it is said. We can also express the passive voice by means of the verb *be*, and a verbal noun; as, "*the book is printing*" (= "*the book is a printing*" = "*the book is in printing*") = "*the book is being printed*."

The passive voice has grown out of reflexive verbs. The *r* in *amo*-r is supposed to be a corruption of the pronoun *se*. Cp. Fr. *s'appeler*, "to be called." Of the Teutonic languages only the Scandinavian dialects have formed a passive voice by means of the suffix *st* = *sk* = *sik* = *self*, Lat. *se*; we have instances of this in *busk*, "to prepare oneself," "to be ready," and *bask* from *bake*.

Mood.

180. **Mood** has reference to the manner or mode in which anything is predicated of the subject.

The **Indicative** mood makes a direct assertion, or asks some direct question about a fact; as, "*John has a book*," "*Has John a book?*"

The **Subjunctive** mood expresses some condition or supposition, as "I may go, if the day *be* fine;" "Love not sleep, lest thou *come* to poverty;" "*Had* I the book, I would give it to you;" "Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in Him."

As the **Subjunctive** mood depends upon the construction of sentences, its peculiarities belong to Syntax. *The Subjunctive is almost gone out of use;* its place is supplied by auxiliary words.

The **Imperative** mood expresses a command, entreaty, desire, request, &c., as, "*follow* me," "*grant* our request."

In this mood we employ the verbal root without **any** inflexion. It has only one person, the second (singular and plural). In the oldest southern English the plural took the termination -th.

Some languages inflect the imperative mood for all persons. We have a substitute for the first and third persons in the use of let; "let me call," "let him call." In old English *let* = cause. Formerly the Subjunctive had the sense of the Imperative, traces of which we have in such expressions as,

> " But *fall* I first
>   Amongst my sorrows, ere my treacherous hand,
>   Touch holy things."
>
>> BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Maid's Tragedy*, Act. iii. Sc. 1.
>
> " My soul turn from them, *turn we* to survey."
>
>> GOLDSMITH, *Trav.* 165.
>
> "*Fall he* that must beneath his rival's arms."—POPE.

The **Infinitive** mood is an abstract noun, and has no inflexions for voice, mood, &c. ; as, "*to see*," "*to know*." See p. 164 for a fuller treatment of the Infinitive Mood.

Participles are verbal adjectives, and always refer to some noun in the sentence. Many adjectives take a participial form in -ing, or -ed, or -en. See § 76, p. 59.

> " Thou to the *untamed* horse
>   Didst use the *conquering* bit ;
>   And here the *well-shaped* oar,
>   By *skilled* hands deftly *plied*,

> Still leapeth through the sea,
> *Following* in wondrous guise
> The fair Nereids with their hundred feet."
>
> <div align="right">PLUMPTRE'S Œdipus at Colonus.</div>

A **Verbal Noun** in -ing (O.E. -ung), often corresponds to a Latin **gerund**, as " he thanked him for *saving* his life." Here *saving* is not a participle, because "*for saving*" represents an older, "*for the saving of.*"

> " Thonkyng him *for the saving of* his life."
>
> <div align="right">Gesta Rom. p. 7.</div>
>
> " *In knowing of* the tid of day."
>
> <div align="right">CHAUCER, Astrolabe, p. 19.</div>
>
> " Concerning the means *of procuring* unity, men must beware that in *the procuring* or *muniting of* religious unity, they do not dissolve and deface the laws of charity and of human society."—BACON, *Essays,* 3.

Here *procuring* = *the procuring of.*

In such expressions as a "*walking stick,*" "the *church-going* bell," the words *walking* and *going* are verbal nouns. In the earlier periods these nouns in -*ing* were preceded by various prepositions—an, a, on, in, at, to.

> " He sent Ancus his sones *an hontynge.*"
>
> <div align="right">Trevisa, iii. 87.</div>
>
> " We han a wyndowe *a wirchyng.*"
>
> <div align="right">Piers Plowman, B. p. 34.</div>
>
> " He fel *on slepynge.*"
>
> <div align="right">Generides, 201.</div>
>
> " While it was *in doynge.*"
>
> <div align="right">Trevisa, iii. 97.</div>
>
> " While it was *in workyng.*"
>
> <div align="right">HARDYNG.</div>
>
> " *At huntyng* he sleugh his father."
>
> <div align="right">Ib.</div>

" If she were going *to hanging*, no gallows should part us."

<div align="right">

MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr*, II. 3.
</div>

" Hou hue Absolon *to hongynge* brouhte."

<div align="right">

Piers Plowman, C. p. 64.
</div>

These verbal nouns may take an adjective or a demonstrative before them.   They may also be used like an ordinary noun as the subject or object of a sentence.

Tense.

181. Verbs undergo a modification to indicate time.   These forms are called **Tenses**.   In the oldest period the verb was inflected for the present and perfect tenses only.

There was in O.E. no distinct form for the future, its place being supplied by the present.   Cp. " he *goes* to town to-morrow."   There were, however, traces of a past indefinite tense formed by the verb *was*, and the imperfect participle.   The perfect and past tenses were expressed by one form.

In the thirteenth century we find the modern future expressed by the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*.   In the fourteenth century we find (1) the present imperfect (continuous) formed by the verb *be*, and the present participle ; (2) the perfect expressed by the auxiliary *have* and the passive participle ; as well as the emphatic form of the present and past tenses, with the auxiliary *do*.

The growth of new forms render a fuller classification of the tenses necessary.   The three simple tenses, **Present, Past**, and **Future**, have four varieties, (1) **indefinite**, (2) **imperfect**, (3) **perfect**, (4) **perfect continuous**.

The fourth variety belongs only to the *Active Voice*.

TABLE OF TENSES.

Tense.	Indefinite.	Imperfect and Continuous.	Perfect.	Perfect and Continuous.
Present	I praise	I am praising	I have praised	I have been praising
Past	I praised	I was praising	I had praised	I had been praising
Future	I shall praise	I shall be praising	I shall have praised	I shall have been praising

For **I praise** and **I praised** we sometimes use **I do praise, I did praise,** which are mostly emphatic. (See **Do** under the heading, **Auxiliary Verbs.**) In the modern stage of the language verbs undergo change of form only for the **present** and **past** tenses.

Number.

182. Verbs are modified to express the **number** and **person** of the subject. There are two **numbers, Singular** and **Plural**; and three **persons** in each number, **First, Second,** and **Third.** Inflexions for number have all disappeared, except in the verb *to be.* The person-endings are preserved only in the singular number of the present and past tenses of the Indicative mood.

For the origin of the inflexions that mark person, see **Verbal Inflexions,** § 200, p. 159.

Conjugation.

183. Verbs are classified, according to their mode of expressing the past tense, into **Strong and Weak Verbs.**

Strong Verbs form their past tense by change of the root vowel; nothing is added to the root, as, **fall, fell, fallen.** All passive participles of strong verbs once ended in **-en**; but this ending has been dropped in very many passive participles of this conjugation.

Weak Verbs form their past tense by adding to the root of the present the letter **-d,** or **-t.** The vowel

e sometimes serves to unite the suffix -d to the root.
The passive participles of Weak Verbs end in -d, or -t.

Verbs that have vowel change in the past tense,
as well as the suffix -d, are not strong verbs. The
vowel change in **told, bought, taught,** has not the
same origin as that in strong verbs.

The strong conjugation includes the oldest verbs in the lan-
guage. Because this process of vowel change is no longer a
regular one, we call these verbs *irregular.*

Very many strong verbs have disappeared from the language :
many have gone over altogether to the weak conjugation ; some
have become weak in the past tense, others in the passive
participle.

A few have lost their past tense and have taken the passive
participle instead, as bit from bitten instead of boot (= he
did bite), while others again have lost their old past participle,
and have taken instead of it the past tense, as, **stood** for
standen.

Strong Verbs.

<small>ORIGIN OF VOWEL CHANGE IN THE PAST TENSE.</small>

184. The oldest mode of forming the perfect tense
in the Indo-European languages was by reduplication.
as, πέ-φευγα, &c., Lat. *pe-pendi,* &c. We have only
one verb of this class in modern English, the verb
did. Cp. Lat. *dedi.*

In the oldest stages of the language, reduplicated
forms were more numerous, as **hêht** (our *hight*), *called,*
from **hatan,** *to call.* The Gothic *haihait,* shows
the reduplication more plainly than the O.E. *hêht.*
On comparing the Gothic verb *haihald* with the
O.E. *heold,* and our *held,* we see that *vowel change* has

arisen out of an original reduplication ; but we are
not able to trace all the past tenses of strong verbs to
an earlier reduplicated form.   Those that can be so
traced form a class by themselves, which we shall call
the *First Division,* and the remainder, the *Second
Division.*

First Division.

185. The first division consists of two classes of
verbs, (1) those whose passive participles preserve the
vowel of the present ; (2) those whose passive parti-
ciples have vowel change.

186. DIVISION L.—CLASS L

				O.E.	
PRES.	**PAST**	**PASS. PART.**	**PRES.**	**PAST**	**PASS. PART**
a, o, ea	**e**	**a, o**	**ea, â, o**	**eo, e**	**ea, a**
fall	fell	fallen	fealle	feoll	feallen
hang	hung	hung	hange	hêng	hangen
hold	held	held, holden	healde	heold	healden
blow	blew	blown	blâwe	bleow	blâwen
know	knew	known	cnâwe	cneow	cnâwen
grow	grew	grown	grôwe	greow	grôwen
throw	threw	thrown	thrâwe	threow	thrâwen
crow	crew	crown	crâwe	creow	crâwen
	[crowed[1]]	[crowed]			
beat	beat	beaten	beâte	beot	beâten
gang	[went]	gone	gange	geong	gangen
mow	[mowed]	[mowed]	mâwe	meow	mâwen
		mown			
sow	[sowed]	sown	sâwe	seow	sâwen
hew	[hewed]	[hewed]	heâwe	heow	heâwen
		hewn			

(1) The following verbs once belonged to this class : **flow,
fold, low, leap, let, row, span, sleep, sweep, walk, well,
weep.**

(2) As early as the fourteenth century we find weak past tenses
of the verbs *know, blow, grow, leap, walk.*

(3) **Fold.** In the English Bible (*Nahum* x. 10) we find p. p.
folden. Cotgrave has **unfolden.**

---

[1] The words in brackets are the ordinary forms now in use.

(4) **Held**, is an instance of a passive participle being replaced by a past tense. This arose through the dropping of *en* in holden, which left hold as the passive participle, in no wise differing in form from the present tense. Cp. *stood* for *stand* = *standen.*

(5) **Hew** retained its strong past tense as late as the sixteenth century.

"And (he) *hew* it al to smal peces."—*St. Juliana*, p. 85.
"And the yere folowynge Kyng Wyllyam *hewe* downe moche
of the wood."—FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 250.
Hewn and **mown** are mostly used as adjectives, as, "*hewn* stones," "*mown* grass."

(6) **Hang.** The old preterite was **heng** (See Chaucer, *Prol.* l. 160). The past hung seems to have arisen from the M.E. form of the past participle **hongen** (pronounced like the *o* in *some*).

> "Me þouȝte I saw a wyn-tre
> On þis tre, on vche a bowȝe
> *Henge* grapes þicke ynowȝe :
> Of þo grapes þat þere *hong*
> In a coupe me þouȝte I wrong."
> *Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 4413.

Hardyng (*Chronicle*, p. 310) uses hong for hung (p. p.) :—
"On Sainct Andrewes day thei wer drawe and hong."
"With ropes were thou bounde and on the gallowe *honge*."
FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 430.

(7) **Sew** = *sewed.*
"An husband that *seu* god sed apon his land."—*Met. Hom.*
p. 145.

(8) **Welk** = *walked.*
"A man *welk* thoru a wod his wai "—*Cursor Mundi*, *Edin-
burgh MS.*
"And than we *welk* forth."—*Paston Letters*, ed. Gairdner,
vol. i. p. 111.

(9) **Leep (lep)** = *leaped.*
> ' For which his hors for feere gan to turne,
> And *leep* asyde, and foundred as he *leep*."
> CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale*, l. 1828.

(10) **Flowed.** The O.E. *fleow* became in E.E. *fleaw, fleaŵ ;* in M.E. *flew* is used as the past of *fly* or *flee.*

   " The flood that *ovyrflew* al the world."—CAPGRAVE, p. 17.

(11) **Slep** = *sleeped.*

   " Thre daies *slep* he al on-on."—*O.E. Misc.* p. 24.

(12) **Wep** = *weeped.*

   " Swiche teares *wep* ure drihten."—*O.E. Hom. II.* p. 145.

187. DIVISION I.—CLASS II.

				O.E.	
PRES.	**PAST**	**PASS. PART.**	**PRES.**	**PAST**	**PASS. PART.**
i	**a, u, ou**	**u, ou**	**i**	**a**	**u**
begin	began	begun	on-ginne[1]	on-gann	on-gunnen
cling	clang [clung]	clung	clinge	clang	clungen
climb	clomb [climbed]	[climbed]	climbe	clamb	clumben
drink	drank	drunk	drince	dranc	druncen
run	ran	run	rinne, yrne	ran, arn	runnen
swim	swam	swum	swimme	swamm	swummen
spin	span [spun]	spun	spinne	spann	spunnen
sing	sang	sung	singe	sang	sungen
shrink	shrank	shrunk	since	sanc	suncen
sink	sank	sunk	scrince	scranc	scruncen
fling	flang [flung]	flung	—	—	—
sling	slang [slung]	slung	—	—	—
ring	rang	rung	hringe	hrang	hrungen
slink	slunk	slung	—	—	—
spring	sprang	sprung	springe	sprang	sprungen
sting	stang [stung]	stung	stinge	stang	stungen
swing	swang [swung]	swung	swinge	swang	swungen
wring	wrang [wrung]	wrung	wringe	wrang	wrungen
win	wan [won]	won	—	—	—
bind	bound	bounden [bound]	binde	band	bunden
find	found	found	finde	fand	funden
fight	fought	fought	—	—	—
grind	ground	ground	grinde	grand	grunden
wind	wound	wound	—	—	—
e	**o**	**o**	**e**	**ea**	**o**
help	holp [helped]	holpen [helped]	helpe	healp	holpen
melt	molt [melted]	molten [melted]	melte	mealt	molten
swell	[swelled]	swollen [swelled]	swelle	sweal	swollen
burst	burst	burst	berste	bearst	borsten

[1] All these verbs had a plural form in **u** :—*we clungon,* &c. = we clung.

(1) To this class once belonged bellow, burn, ding, delve, carve, milk, mourn, starve, swallow, stint, spurn, thrash, wink, yield.

(2) Bounden, drunken, molten, shrunken, sunken, are still occasionally used as *adjectives*.

(3) The forms in u (*spun, clung*) have arisen from the passive participle.

(4) The ou in *bound*, &c. stands for an older o or a. This ou is probably due to the u in the past participle which in M.E. became ou ; thus the O.E. *funden* = M.E. *founden*. Cp. O.E. *cu, hu* = M.E. *cou, hou* = Eng. *cow, how.*

(5) **Clomb** = *climbed.*

> "So *clomb* this first grand thief into God's fold."
> > MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, iv. 192.

> " We forded the river, and *clomb* the high hill."
> > BYRON, *Siege of Corinth*, l. 6.

(6) **Swal** = *swelled.*

> " And [he] *swalle* and become grete."
> > LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 37.

> " Hir thought it *swal* so sore about hir hert."
> > CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 6549.

(7) **Dalf** = *delved.*

> " When Adam *dalve* and Eve span,
>   Who was then the gentleman ? "
> > PILKINGTON, p. 125 ; see *Piers*
> > *Plowman*, B. vi. 193.

> " Whenne thei be *dolven* in her den."
> > *Babees Book*, p. 52.

(8) **Halp** = *helped.*

> " This good lady she *halpe*."
> > LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 136.

"Those that be in hell cannot be *holpen* by it [prayer]."—
> GRINDAL, *Rem.* p. 34.

(9) **Yald** = *yielded.*

"He *yalde* ayen the sight unto this good man."—LA TOUR
LANDRY, p. 102.

"He *yald* hym creaunt to Crist."
Piers Plowman, ed. Wright, l. 7810, B. xii. 193.

Surrey has the old past participle *yolden ;* Fabyan has *yolded.*

(10) **Foughten** = *fought* (p.p.).

"This yere was the felde of Dykysmew *foughten.*"—FABYAN,
p. 683.

"On the *foughten* field."
MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, vi. 410.

(11) **Malt** = *melted.*

"And the metalle be the hete of the fire *malt.*"
CAPGRAVE, p. 9.

(12) **Dang** = *dinged.*

"That thai suld tak kobille stanes,
And *ding* his teth out all at anes ;
And when thai with the stanes him *dang,*
He stode ay laghand tham omang."
MS. Harl. 4196, fol. 170.

(13) **Carf** = *carved.*

"And *carf* byforn his fader at the table."
CHAUCER, *Prol.* l. 100.

"Tho was he *corven* out of his harneys."
The Knightes Tale, l. 1838.

(14) **Starf** = *starved, died.*

"— Kyng Capaneus
That *starf* at Thebes."
Ib. l. 935.

(15) **Wonk** = *winked.*

"He *wonk,* and gan about hyme to behold."
Lancel. of the Laik, l. 1058.

(16) **Burst** (past) has come in through the old p. p. *borsten*
or *bursten.* The true past is **brast** or **barst.**

"And ute as a brok it *brast* þe strand."
Cursor Mundi, l. 6392.

188. *Second Division.*

DIVISION II.—CLASS I.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
				O.E.	
ea	o (a)	o	e	æ	o
(1) bear	bore, bare*	born	bere	bær	boren
break	broke, brake*	broken			
shear	[sheared]	shorn [sheared]	scere	scær	scoren
speak	spoke, spake*	spoken	sprece	spræc	sprecen
steal	stole	stolen	stǝle	stæl	stolen
tear	tore, tare*	torn	tere	tær	toren
(2) come	came	come	cume	com	cumen

(1) The old verbs **nim** (take), **quell** once belonged to this class.

(2) The O.E. **æ** became in M.E. **a** (cp. the archaic forms **bare, spake, brake**), and **o**.

(3) The **n** of the p.p. in M.E. was often dropped in all dialects except the Northern. We find in Shakespeare many instances of these curtailed forms, as, **broke, spoke, stole,** for *broken, spoken, stolen.*

(4) **Shear.** The old past tense was **share** or **shore.**

" First he *shar* a-two here throtes."—HAVELOK, l. 1413.

189. DIVISION II.—CLASS II.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
				O.E.	
i	a	i	i, e	æ, (ea)	e
(1) bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid	bidde	bæd	beden
give	gave	given	gife	geaf	gifen
lie	lay	lien,* lain	licge	læg	legen
sit	sat	sat	sitte	sæt	seten
ea, (ee), e	a, (o)	ea, (ee,) o			
(2) eat	ate	eaten	ete	æt	eten
get	gat, got	gotten,* got	-gite	-geat	-geten
tread	trod	trodden, trod	trede	træd	treden
see	saw	seen	seo, seohe	seah	ge-sên
weave	wove	woven	wefe	wæf	wefen
—	quoth	—	cwethe	cwæth	cweden
—	was	—	[wese]	wæs	wesen

Words marked thus * are archaic.

(1) **Quoth** is now used as a present tense. The root of the present is seen in *bequeathe*, the old preterite of which was *biquath* :—

> "[He] *biquath* his serke to his love."
>
> *Gest. Rom.* 23.

(2) **Fret, knead, wreak,** and **mete** (measure), once belonged to this conjugation.

(3) The old form **lien** occurs in *Gen.* xxvi. 10, *Ps.* lxviii. In Tyndall it is spelt **lyne, lyen.**

(4) The past tenses of **wreak** in M.E. were *wrek* and *wrak ;* p.p. *ywroken.* Spenser uses the p.p. *wroken.* Surrey has *unwroken = unrevenged.*

(5) The **o** in **trod, got, quoth,** arises out of M.E. **a** = O.E. = **æ.**

(6) Scott (*Waverley,* xi.) has **eat** = *ate.* Shakespeare (*King John* I. I.), has **eat** = *eaten*; O.E. **æ** becomes M.E. **e(ee),** as well as **a** ; hence M.E. **eet** = **eat** = **ate.**

> " Butter and bred thai *ete* al-sua."
>
> *C. Mundi,* G., l. 2715.

> " Butter and breed thei *eet* also."—*Ib.* T.

190. DIVISION II.—CLASS III.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART
a	o, oo, e	a (o)	a	o	a
awake	awoke	awoke	wace	wôc	wacen
forsake	forsook	forsaken			
lade	[laded]	laden[laded]	hlade	hlôd	hladen
grave, engrave	[graved]	[graved] graven	grafe	grôf	grafen
stand	stood	stood	stande	stôd	standen
shave	[shaved]	shaven [shaved]	scaf	scôf	scafen
shake	shook	shaken	scace	scôc	scacen
swear	swore	sworn	swerige	swôr	sworen
take	took	taken	tace	tôc	tacen
draw	drew	drawn	drage	drôh	dragen
slay	slew	slain	sleahhe	slôh	sleahhen

(1) To this class of verbs once belonged **ache, bake, fare, gnaw, heave, laugh, shape, step, wade, wash, wax, yell.**

(2) The past tense is often used for the past participle, as **mistook** = *mistaken* (*Jul. Cæsar,* I. 2 ; Milton's *Arcades*),

shook = shaken (*Paradise Lost*, VI., 219); **stood** has taken the place of the p.p. **standen**, or **stonden**.

(3) **Sware** for **swore** occurs in *Mark*, VI., 23. The a is not original, but probably arose through the M.E. *swar=swer*, which caused it to be classed with *spake*, *bare*, &c. Cp. l. 1618 in *Cursor Mundi*, where "he *suar* his ath" in Cotton MS. (Northern dialect) = "he *swor* an ooth" in Trin. MS. (Midland dialect).

(4) **Bake.** The old p.p **baken** occurs in *Levit.* ii. 4.

> " myn hungir *book* thi blisful breed."
> POL. *Rel. Love Poems*, p. 191.

> " —benes and bren *ybaken* togideres."
> *Piers Plowman*, vi. B. 184, p. 102.

(5) **Gnaw** was once conjugated like **draw**, **slay**. In M.E. we find *gnow* and *gnew*; *gnew* was used late in the sixteenth century. The p.p. *be-gnawn* occurs in the *Taming of the Shrew*, iii. 2.

" þat best *gnow* up al bidene."—*Cursor Mundi*, G. l. 6043.

" So depe hi [rasours] *wode* and *gnowe*."—*St. Juliana, p.* 85.

(6) **Heave.** For **heaved** we sometimes find **hove** and **heft.**

The O.E. pret. was *hôf.* E.E. *hæf, heof, hef,* M.E. *hef, hove.*

" She *hef* hir heued heyer."—CHAUCER, *Boethius*, l. 5141.

" Ure lafdi......this dai was *hoven* into heuene."—*O.E. Hom.* II. p. 167.

(7) **Shape.** The old past tense **shope**, was in use in the sixteenth century.

> " I *shoop* me into shroudes."
> *Piers Plowman*, B. Prol. 2.

> " But at the last god *shope* a remedy."
> HICKSCORNER, p. 163, ed. 1874.

The p. p. occurs in mis-*shapen*, ill-*shapen*. See *Ps.* li. 5.

(8) **Grave.** We have the old p.p. as an adjective in "a *graven* image."

The verb *to grave* once signified *to bury*.

> " In Ebron hir *grof* Abraham,
>   Thar first was *graven* hali Adam."
>   *C. Mundi*, G. l. 3213.

(9) **Lade.**   We find as passive participle loden, loaden, as well as laden.

(10) **Wash.**   The old p.p. was retained very late in un-washen.

> " Hir body *wessch* with water."
>   CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale*, l. 1425.

(11) **Wax** to grow.   Spenser has *wox* past, and *woxen* p.p., *waxen = grown*, occurs in *Gen.* xix. 13, *Lev.* xxv. 39.

> " þai stod þan still and *wex* no more."
>   *Cursor Mundi*, l. 1420.

191. DIVISION II.—CLASS IV.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
i (long)	o	i (short)	î	â	i
a-bide	abode	abode, abiden*	bide	bâd	biden
bite	bit	bitten	bîte	bât	biten
drive	drove	driven	drîfe	drâf	drifen
chide	chode,* chid	chidden, chid	cîde	câd	ciden
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid	rîde	râd	riden
rise	rose	risen	rîse	râs	risen
rive	rove [rived]	riven [rived]			
shine	shone	shone	scîne	scân	scinen
shrive	shrove	shriven	scrîfe	scrâf	gescrifen
slide	slid	slidden, slid	slîde	slâd	sliden
smite	smote, smit*	smitten	smîte	smât	smiten
stride	strode	stridden	strîthe	strâth	strithen
thrive	throve, thrived	thriven, throve*	—	—	—
write	wrote, writ*	written, writ*	wrîte	wrât	writen
strike	struck	struck, stricken	strîce	strâc	stricen
strive	strove	striven	—	—	—

* Obsolete.

(1) To this class once belonged gripe, flite (strive), glide, reap, slit, spew, sigh, wreathe.

(2) The o in this class of verbs stands for an older a, which occurs in the archaic forms drave (*Josh.* xvi. 10, Spenser, *F. Q.* VI. vii. 12); strake (*Acts*, xxvii. 17); strave (Surrey).

(3) Bit (cp. the old past tenses rid, slid, writ, smit), is borrowed from the pass. participle. The true form is bot, or boot.

> "The serpent *boot* the grehounde grevously."
>
> > *Gest. Rom.* 87.

(4) Shone, abode, struck (p.p.) show how the past tense has replaced the older passive participle.

> "Till the sunne haveth *sinen*."
> = Till the sun hath shone.
>
> > *O.E. Miscell.* p. 1.

> "Yf he had *abyden* at home."
>
> > LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 170.

> "Well *stricken* in years."
>
> > *Luke* i. 7 ; *see Ps.* liii. 4.

Shakespeare has,

> "*Struck* in years."—*Rich. III.* i. 1.

(5) **Wreathen** sometimes occurs as the p.p. of **wreathe**, or **writhe**.

> "*Wreathen* hair."
>
> > LATIMER ; see *Exodus*, xxviii. 14, 22, 24, 25.

The M.E. past of *wrethe* was *wrooth* or *wroth.* In the sixteenth century we find *writhe* used as a past tense.

> "He *writhe* her necke in sonder."
>
> > STUBS, *The Anatomie of Abuses*, p. 67, ed. 1585.

(6)   "He *grop* [griped] an axe, that was ful god."
>
> > HAVELOK, l. 1776.

(7)   "I thair chaulis *raf* [rived] in tua."
>
> > *Cursor Mundi*, G. p. 433.

(8)   "He *slod* [slid] slişle a-down."
>
> > *Will. of Palerne*, l. 792.

(9)   "The vapour, which that of the erthe *glod* [glided]."
>
> > CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 10707.

(10)   "And Jacob *chode* with Laban."
>
> > *Gen.* xxxi. 36.

DIVISION II.—CLASS V.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
ee, oo	o	o	eo	ea	o
freeze	froze	frozen	freose	freás	froren
seethe	sod* [seethed]	sodden, sod* [seethed]	seothe	seáth	soden
cleave	clove [cleft]	cloven[cleft]	cleofe	cleáf	clofen
choose*	chose	chosen	ceose	ceás	coren
lose	[lost]	[lost] lorn,* forlorn	leose	leás	loren
shoot	shot	shot, shotten*	sceote	sceát	scoten
fly	flew	flown	fleoge, fleohe	fleáh	flogen

(1) Many weak verbs once belonged to this class, as, brook, bow, brew, chew, creep, crowd, dive, flee, fleet (float), lie lose, lock, greet, knot, reek, rue, shove, smoke, snow, suck, slip, tug.

(2) Clave occurs in the Bible for clove (*Gen.* xx. 3).

Cloven has now only an adjectival force, as in "*cloven* foot.*"

      " It [sea] *clef* [*claue* C.] and gaf him redi gate."

                          Cursor Mundi, G. l. 6262.

Cleave, "to cling to," is a weak verb, yet clave is found in *Ruth*, i. 14, as its past tense.

(3) Lorn = *losen*, and forlorn = *forlosen*, are archaic forms. In the O.E. p.p. the s has passed into an r (cp. *was* and *were*, &c.)

      "——After he had fair Una *lorn*."

                          SPENSER, *F. Q.* i. 42.

  " Thritti yeir es siþen gan
    þat i mi sun had *losen* dere."—*Cursor Mundi*, C. l. 5363.

(4) Froren = *frozen.*

"My heart blood is well nigh *froren* (frozen) I feel."

                       Ib. Shep. Cal, Feb.

      "——The parching air
Burns *frore* (= frozen) and cold performs th' effect of fire."

                     MILTON, *Par. Lost.*

" A *froren* mur [wall]."—*O.E. Miscell.* p. 151.

(5) Chosen has replaced the old p.p. coren.

      " For hir childe thenne sho him *chees*."

                     Cursor Mundi, T. l. 5643.

"He is to-fore alle othre *i-coren*."
> *O.E. Misc.* p. 98.

(6) Seethe. In the Bible (*Gen.* xxv. 29), sod = *boiled* occurs as the past tense.

"Wortes or other herbes . . . .
The whiche sche schredde and *seeth* for hir lyvinge."
> CHAUCER, *The Clerkes Tale*, l. 227.

"Some (fisch) thei solde and some thei *sothe*."
> *Piers Plowman*, B. xv. 288.

"*Ysothe* or ybake."—*Ib.* p. 278.

"I force not whether it be *sodden* or roast."
> *The Four Elements*, p. 35, ed. 1874.

"Of all manner of dishes both *sod* and roast."—*Ib.* p. 25.

(7) "Hit *snew* [snowed] to hem as hit were floure."
> *Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 6381.

192. Some verbs that have now strong past tense or passive participle, were once weak.[1]

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
betide	betid*	[betid]
dig	dug	dug
	digged*	digged*
hide	hid	hidden, [hid]
rot	[rotted] .	rotten
show	[showed]	shown
	[shewed]	[shewed, showed]
stick	stuck	stuck
	stack*	—
strew	[strewed]	strown
spit	spit,* spat	spat, spitten*
saw	[sawed]	sawn
wear	wore	worn
	ware*	

The past tenses *betid, hid, spit, spat,* are only apparently *strong*. The M.E. forms *betid-de, hid-de, spit-te, spat-te,* (cp. *swat-te,* sweated) were *weak*.

---

[1] Forms marked thus * are *archaic*. Forms in brackets are *weak*.

193. ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG VERBS.[1]

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
abide	abode	abode
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoke
	awaked•	*awaked*
bake	—	baken
	baked	*baked*
bear (bring forth)	bore, bare•	born
bear (carry)	bore, bare•	borne
beat	beat	beaten
begin	began	begun
behold	beheld	beholden, beheld
bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
bind	bound	bounden,• bound
bite	bit	bitten, bit
blow	blew	blown
break	broke, brake•	broken
burst	burst	burst, bursten•
chide	chode,• chid	chidden, chid
choose	chose, chase•	chosen
cleave (split)	clove	cloven
	clave•	—
	cleft	*cleft*
cling	clung	clung
climb	clomb	—
	climbed	*climbed*
cling	clang	clung
come	came	come
crow	crew	crown
	crowed	*crowed*
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk, drunken
drive	drove, drave•	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen

[1] The forms in italics are *weak*. Those marked • thus are *archaic*.

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
fight	fought	foughten*, fought
find	found	found
fling	flung, flang*	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forget	forgot	forgotten
	forgat*	forgot*
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen
		frorn, frore*
get	got, gat*	got, gotten
give	gave	given
go	*went*	gone
grave	*graved*	graven
en-grave		en-graven*
	engraved	*engraved*
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
	hanged	*hanged*
heave	hove	—
	heaved	*heaved*
help	—	holpen
	helped	*helped*
hew	—	hewn
	hewed	*hewed*
hold	held	held, holden
know	knew	known
lade	—	laden, loaden
	laded	*laded*
lie	lay	lain, lien*
lose	—	lorn, forlorn
	lost	*lost*
melt	—	molten
	melted	*melted*
mow	—	mown
	mowed	*mowed*
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid*
ring	rang, rung*	rung

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
rise	rose	risen
rive	—	riven
	rived	*rived*
run	ran	run
see	saw	seen
seethe	sod	sodden, sod•
	seethed	*seethed*
shake	shook	shaken
shave	*shaved*	shaven, *shaved*
shear	*sheared*, shore•	shorn, *sheared*
shine	shone	shone
	shined	shined•
shoot	shot	shot, shotten•
shrink	shrank	shrunk
	shrunk•	shrunken
sing	sang, sung•	sung
sink	sank	sunk, sunken
sit	sat	sat, sitten•
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slid, slidden
sling	slung, slang•	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
smite	smote, smit•	smitten, smit•
sow	—	sown
	sowed	*sowed*
speak	spoke, spake•	spoken
spin	spun, span•	spun
spring	sprung, sprang•	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole, stale•	stolen
sting	stung, stang•	stung
stink	stank	stunk
stride	strode, strid•	stridden
strike	struck	struck
		stricken
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
	sware•	
swell	*swelled*	swollen, *swelled*

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
swim	swam, swum*	swam
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
tear	tore, tare*	torn
thrive	throve	thriven
	thrived	*thrived*
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden, trod
wake	woke	—
	waked	*waked*
weave	wove	woven
win	won, wan*	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung, wrang*	wrung
write	wrote, writ*	written

Weak Verbs.

194. The **strong** conjugation comprehends all primitive verbs ; to the **weak** belong all derivative and borrowed verbs.

The **weak** conjugation is sometimes called the **regular** conjugation, because the formation of the past tense of weak verbs by means of the suffix **d**, is the ordinary method now in use. The method of forming the past tense by reduplication and by vowel change, is quite obsolete. Children and uneducated persons often make the strong verbs conform to the weak conjugation, and say *seed* for *saw*, &c. We have done exactly the same with regard to many old verbs, as, *shoved* for *shof*, *brewed* for *brew*, &c.

195. Weak Verbs form their past tense by means of the suffix -**d** or -**t.**

In old English we find that this ending had a longer form -**de**, as, Ic ner-e-de *I saved*. This -**de** represents a more primitive **dede** = **did**, which is the past tense, (formed by reduplication) of the verb **do.**

I **loved** = I **love-did** ; thou **lovedest** = thou **love-didst**, &c.

196. The suffix -d is united to the root by the connecting vowel **-e**, as, **lov-e-d, command-e-d.**

(1) The connecting vowel, though preserved in writing, is dropped in pronunciation, except when the verbal root ends in a dental. Thus we **loved, praised, thanked,** are pronounced **lovd, praizd, thankt**; but in **commanded,** and **lifted,** the **-ed** has, necessarily, its full pronunciation.

The verbs of this class in O.E. had the radical vowel *short.*

For the reason of the change of **d** to **t,** see § p. 63, 45.

197. The passive participles also end in **d** or **t.** This suffix has not the same origin as the **d** of the past tense.

198. The following verbs have no connecting vowel, and are sometimes called *contracted* verbs :—

(2) *a.* Before the addition of the suffix **-d,** the radical vowel is shortened.

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
hear	heard	heard
shoe	shod	shod
flee	fled	fled

b. If the root ends in **d,** the suffix **-d** is dropped, and the radical vowel is shortened.

feed	fed	fed
lead	led	led
read	red	red

In the O.E. the past tenses of *a* and *b* were the same : cp. O.E.

	Inf.	Past	Pass Part.
a.	hŷr-an (hear)	hyr-de	hŷr-ed
	fêd -an (feed)	fêd-de	fêd-ed
b.	lǽd-an (lead)	lǽd-de	lêd-ed

Flee was originally strong, see p. 140 ; *meet, met, met* has conformed to *lead,* &c.   Cp. O.E. *mêtan, mêt-te, mêt-ed.*

In E.E. we find the shortened p.p. fed, led, &c. The loss of the final e of the past tense, in the fifteenth century, reduced the past tense and the p.p. to the same form : thus, *ledde* became *ledd*, or *led*.

In some few verbs ending in a liquid, or combination of liquids, t has replaced the older d.

	Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
	feel	felt	felt
	deal	dealt	dealt
	smell	smelt	smelt
	mean	meant	meant
	dream	dreamt	dreamt
	burn	burnt	burnt
Cp. O.E.	dǽl-an	dǽl-de	gedǽl-ed
	bærn-an	bærn-de	bærn-ed .

(3) The suffix -**d** (-**t**) is often dropped after **d**, **t**, **st**, **rt**, **ft**, and the present, past, and passive participle, are identical in form.

rid	rid	rid
shred	shred	shred
set	set	set
shut	shut	shut
cut	cut	cut
put	put	put
hurt	hurt	hurt
lift	lift[1]	lift
thrust	thrust	thrust
cast	cast	cast

In O.E. *rid* and *set* were

	Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
	â-hreddan	âhred-de	â-hredd-ed
	sett-an	set-te	sett-ed, set

Shut, put, shred, spread, were perhaps similarly conjugated. *Cut, put, hurt, lift,* &c. are not found in O.E.

In Middle English the past tense had a form distinct from

---

[1] In the English Bible.

the pass. participle, as, *ridde, shredde, sette, cutte,* &c. We have now longer forms for some of the M.E. shorter ones ; cp. *reste* = *rested ; wette = wetted,* &c. O.E. *scyl-de = shielded ; stylte* = *stilted.*

(4) The suffix -t replaces d after **p, f, s, ch, v.**
The radical vowel, if long, is shortened.

Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
creep	crept	crept
weep	wept	wept
kiss	kist	kist
lose	lost	lost
pitch	pight	pight*
leave	left	left
cleave	cleft	cleft

The **v** in *leave, cleave, bereave,* was originally f. In M.E. *crept, wept* in the past tense were *crepte, wepte ;* and also *crep, wep,* (strong forms).

(5) Verbs ending in **ld, nd, rd,** changed the **d** of the root into **t,** and the tense suffix is dropped.

build	built	built
gild	guilded, gilt	gilt
bend	bent	bent
send	sent	sent
gird	girt	girt

The t in the past tense of *built,* &c., stands for an original d + de, which became de, then te, and, lastly, t. This last change took place during the fourteenth century.

In Elizabethan writers we meet with the longer forms, *builded,* &c., and we have also two participial forms, the contracted, and the uncontracted, with slightly different meanings, as, **gilt** and **gilded, bent** and **bended, blent** and **blended.**

In O.E. we find only the long forms of the p.p., as, *gyrd-ed, send-ed,* &c.

(6) Some few verbs have vowel-change with the addition of **d** or **t** in the past tense.

---

* Archaic.

(a)	tell	told	told
	sell	sold	sold
(b)	seek	sought	sought
	teach	taught	taught

The change of vowel in these verbs is not the same as that in the strong verbs. It is the present that has changed. The root of **tell** is *tal*, which we preserve in **tale**, and **tal-k**. Cp. **sell** and **sale**. Between the root and the infinitive suffix there was once an **i**, which turned the **a** to **e**; thus, root *tal*, whence *tali-en*, modified to *teli-en* or *tell-en*. Cp. *man*, *men*. The **o** in **told**, **sold**, represents the older **a** of *tale*, *talk*, which was never modified by the lost suffix -**i**.

The **t** in **sought**, &c., is due to the *sharp k* or *c* in **seek**. Under the influence of **t**, the guttural has become **h**, or **gh**.

In the seventeenth century we find **rought, raught, straught**, the past tenses of *reck, reach, stretch*.

In M.E. we had *roughte = recked; raughte = reached; straughte = stretched; laughte = latched, seized*.

The verbs of this class were in O.E. contracted in past tense and pass. part.

199. The following weak verbs have some peculiarities that need explanation.

Catch, caught, caught. This verb of Norman-French origin has followed the past tense &c. of E.E. *lacchen*, to catch, take; *lahte* (past).

Analagous to *caught* we find **fraught**, as well as **freighted**; and **distraught** for distracted; also *raught = reached* in Shakespeare, *Love's Labour Lost*, IV. 2, 41; *raught* also = *reft*. Cp. 2 *Hen. VI.* II. 3, 43.

> " I *raught* his head from his body."
>
> *Pierce Penilesse,* p. 82.

Clothe, clad, clad. In O.E. we find *clâthian*, (inf.) *clâthode* (past), *clâthod* (p.p.), = M.E. *clothe* (*clethe*), *clothede* (*clethede, cledde*), *cled, clad*.

In M.E. we find *ledde, ladde*, = *led*, which has probably led to *clad* through *cled = cledde = clethde*.

Make, made, made. Made lost its radical *k* as early as the thirteenth century. In the fourteenth we find in the Northern dialects *ma* (inf) and *mas = makes.* Cp. M.E. *ta = to take, tas = takes, tan = taken.*

Have, had, had; O.E. *habban, hæfde, hæfed;* E.E. *have, hefde (hedde, hadde), ihafd (ihad).*

There was also a short form *ha, to have,* from which comes **has** = *haves.* In the M.E. Northern dialect we find *has.* See Bruce, xiii. 642, (ed. Skeat).

Say, said, said; O.E. *secgan, sægde, sægd.*

Lay, laid, laid; O.E. *lecgan, legde, legd.*

In **say, lay** (M.E. *seye,, leye*), the **y** represents the older cg (g).

Buy, bought, bought; O.E. *bycgan, bohte, boht.* In M.E. *buggen, bugge = to buy:* and here the **y** represents an older *g* which makes its appearance in the past tense. Cp. *slay* and *slaughter.*

Think, thought, thought; O.E. *thencan, thôhte, thôht.*

The **n** is not radical; cp. *gange* and *go; stand* and *stood.*

(Me)thinks, (me)thought, (me)thought; O.E. *thyncth, thuhte, thûht.*

Work, wrought, wrought; O.E. *wyrcan, worhte, worht.*

Wrought, as a past tense, is almost superseded by the more modern form, **worked.**

Went was originally the past tense of **wend.** O.E. *wendan, to turn, go.* It replaced the O.E. *eo-de,* M.E. *sede, sode, yode* (past tense of the root **i** *to go*).

Go (old form **gang**) was originally a strong verb, as is seen by its p.p. **gone.**

Ago = **agone** is the p.p. of the O.E. verb *agan,*

to go by, elapse. It is now used adverbially, as "a long time *ago*."

> "By Saint Mary, and I wist that, I would be *ago*."
>> HICKSCORNER, p. 167, ed. 1874.

. . . .

> "Who, think you, brought here this figure?
> Certes, Lord Nature,
> Himself not long *agone*."
>> *The Four Elements*, p. 28, ed. 1874.

Do, did, done, is a reduplicated verb, and of course belongs to the strong conjugation of verbs.

The Sanskrit *dhâ* to place is cognate with English *do*, and its perfect *dadhau* is formed by reduplication, like English *did*.

Verbal Inflexions.

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

200. Verbs are of two kinds, primary and derivative. All the strong verbs are of primary origin; the weak verbs are of secondary formation. To **bear** is a primary verb, because it is formed directly from the root, **bar**; but **tell**, as we have seen (p. 157), is formed from the nominal theme, **tale**, and is therefore a derivative verb.

The root is the significant element in the verb, to which are added endings to mark **person, tense,** or **mood.**

Sometimes the personal terminations are added directly to the verbal root, as in **do-st, do-th,** or by means of a connecting vowel, as in **lov-e-st, lov-e-th.**

The person-endings were originally pronominal roots placed *after*, and compounded with, the verbal

root or theme, as if we were to say love-I, love-thou, love-he, &c.

201. The suffix of the first **person** singular, was originally **m** (for *mi*), which we still retain in the verb, **a-m.**

Cp. Lat. **su-m,** Gr. εἰ-μι, Sansk. as-mi = *I am*, Ger. bin, O.H.G. *pim,* O.E. (Northern) *beom, I be.*

202. The suffix of the **second person** singular is -**st**; it was originally -t, which can be traced back to a suffix -ti, identical in origin with the root of **thou.** In the subjunctive mood this suffix is altogether lost.

The original **t** occurs in **shal-t, wil-t, ar-t.**
Strong verbs in O.E. lost this t of ti, and the second person singular ends only in e; as, heold-e = held-e-st, *didst hold.*
This -**st** belonged only to *weak* verbs in the earliest period, but it was gradually extended to *strong* verbs in the fourteenth century.

203. The suffix of the **third person** is -**th** (the root of **the,** tha-t) = *he, that.* As early as the eleventh century, in the Northern dialects, **th** was softened to **s**; but the former is now archaic.

In the past tense of strong and weak verbs, the endings in the first and third persons singular have altogether disappeared.

204. In modern English we have no plural suffixes.
In O.E. the indicative present plural of all persons ended in -**th** (originally the ending of the second person plural), as (1) **ber-a-th**; (2) **ber-a-th**; (3) **ber-a-th.**

The past indicative and the subjunctive (present and past) ended all their persons in -**n** (the original suffix of the third person plural); as, subjunctive present **find-e-n**; indicative past, **fund-o-n,** and subjunctive past, **fund-e-n,** *or* fund-o-n.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find the Southern dialect keeping -th for the present plural indicative, the Midland -n, and the Northern dropping all endings, or taking -s in the second and third persons. (See § 49, p. 31).

In O.E. the personal endings were often dropped when the pronoun followed the verbs; as gâ *ge* = gath *ge* (go ye); ete *we* = eten *we*, let us eat).

The plural in -en was in use up to the middle of the sixteenth century, and a few examples are to be found in Spenser and Shakespeare; Hall, (contemporary with Milton) uses it in his Satires, *e g.*

> " And angry bullets *whistlen* at his ear."
>
> vi. 46.

In O.E. the imperative plural ended in -th, as *nim*-ath, *take ye*. In M.E. this ending was kept up in the Midland and Southern dialects, but not in the Northern dialect, where -s was used instead of it.

205. Old English Conjugation of Verbs.

STRONG VERBS.

Active Voice.
Nim-an, to take.

Pres. Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
nim-an	nam	num-en

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present (and Future) Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. ic nim-e	we nim-ath
2. thû nim-est	ge nim-ath
3. he nim-eth	hi nim-ath

M

Past Tense.

1. ic nam	we nam-on
2. thû nâm-e	ge nam-on
3. he nam	hi nam-on

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. ic nim-e	we nim-en
2. thû nim-e	ge nim-en
3. he nim-e	hi nim-en

Past Tense.

1. ic nâm-e	we nâm-en[1]
2. thû nâm-e	ge nâm-en
3. he nâm-e	hi nâm-en

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

nim	nim-ath

Simple Inf.	Pres. Part.
nim-an	nim-ende

Dative Inf.	Pass. Part.
nim-anne	num-en

WEAK VERBS.

Active Voice.

Infin.	Preterite.	Pas. Part.
ner-*i*-an (*save*)	ner-*e*-de	ner-*e*-d
luf-*i*-an (*love*)	luf-*o*-de	luf-*o*-d
hŷr-an (*hear*)	hŷr-de	hŷr-*e*-d

---

[1] The oldest form of the past subjunctive plural ending was *-en*, which afterwards became *-on*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present (and Future) Tense.

	Sing.		Plur.
1.	neri-e, lufig-e, hŷr-e	1.	neri-ath, lufi-ath, hŷr-ath
2.	neri-est, luf-ast, hŷr-est	2.	neri-ath, lufi-ath, hŷr-ath
3.	ner-eth, luf-ath, hŷr-eth	3.	neri-ath, lufi-ath, hŷr-ath

Past Tense.

1.	ner-e-de, luf-o-de, hŷr-de	1.	ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hŷr-d-on
2.	ner-e-de-st, luf-o de-st, hŷr-de-st	2.	ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hŷr-d-on
3.	ner-e-de, luf-o de, hŷr-de	3.	ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hŷr-d-on

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. }		1. }	
2. }	neri-e, lufig-e, hŷr-e	2. }	neri-en, lufig-en, hŷr-en
3. }		3. }	

Imperfect Tense.

1. }		1.) ner-e-d-en,
2. }	ner-e-de, luf-o-de, hŷr-de	2. } luf-o-d-en,
3. }		3.) hŷr-d-en

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	Sing.		Plur.
2.	ner-e, luf-a, hŷr	2.	neri-ath, lufi-ath, hŷr-ath

Simple Infin.
neri-an, lufi-an, hŷr-an

Dative Infin.
neri-anne, lufi-anne, hŷr-anne

Pres. Participle.
neri-ende, lufig-ende, hŷr-ende

Pass. Participle.
ner-e-d, luf-o-d, hŷr-e-d

M 2

Infinitive Mood.

206. The infinitive is simply an abstract noun. In O.E. the infinitive ending was -an, as drinc-an, *to drink.*

In the twelfth and following centuries, this -an became -en (-in) or e.

In Wickliffe, the suffix is for the most part -e ; in Chaucer -en or -e. This -e after a time became silent, and the infinitive was only distinguished by the preposition to (except after an auxiliary verb), which at first belonged only to the dative or gerundial infinitive.

> "As ha schulde *stupin* and *strecche* forth that swire (neck)."
>
> > *Juliana,* B. p. 73, A.D. 1210.
>
> "In ful a bitter bath *bathien* ich schal naked."
>
> > O. E. *Miscell.* p. 180, A.D. 1246.
>
> "In a bytter bath ich schal *bathe* naked."
>
> > *Ib.* p. 181, later version.
>
> "To *bakbite,* and to *bosten :* and *bere* fals witnesse."
>
> > *Piers Plowman,* B. ii. 80.

The infinitive in O.E. was inflected for the dative by the suffix -e, and was governed by the preposition to ; as, tô gehyrann-e, *tc hear.* This is sometimes called the **gerundial** infinitive, in contradistinction to the simple or uninflected infinitive.

It was used chiefly to express purpose ; it translated also Lat. supines, gerunds, future participles, and *ut* with the subjunctive ; as, "what went ye out *for to see*," "he is *to blame,*" &c.

> Latin supine in -*um.*
>
> "Sôthlîce ût eode se sædere his sæd *tô sâwenne.*"
> = Verily outwent the sower to sow his seed.
>
> > *Matt.* xiii. 4.

Latin periphrastic conjugation in -*rus* and -*dus.*

" We selfe mâgon seôthan thâ thing the *tô seôthenne* sind,
    and brædan thâ thing the *tô brædenne* sind."
= We ourselves may seethe the things that are to be sodden,
    and roast the things that are to be roasted.
                                  ÆLFRIC.

" Hit is sceamu *tô tellanne,* ac hit ne thûhte him nân sceamu *tô
    dônne.*"
= It is shameful to tell, but it appeared to him no shame
    to do.—*Chronicle,* A.D. 1052.

Latin supine in -*u.*

    " Êthe ... *tô findanne.*"
    = Easy to find.
                  Ps. lxxvi. 16.

Latin genitive of gerund.

    " Mihte *tô forlâtenne.*"
    = Power of forgiving, *or* to forgive.
                  John xix. 10.

Sometimes we find the dative infinitive used to mark the
future.
    " Thone calic þe ic *tô drincenne* hæbbe."
    = The cup that I have to drink.
                  Matt. xx. 22.
    " *Ic tô drincenne hæbbe.*"
    = Lat. *bibiturus sum.*

The gerundial ending not only took the same form as the
simple infinitive, but it was often confounded with the present
participle in -*ende,* or -*inde* (later -*inge*) in E. E. and M.E.

" Thenne beginne we to *fleonne* ant turneth to the lufte, ant
    this is al that we doth te *deruen* cristene men ant *eggin*
    to then uuele."—*Juliana,* p. 44.
" The synfulle (fasteth) for to *clensen* him, the rightwise for *t·*
    witiende his rightwisnesse."—*O.E. Hom.* II. p. 57.

"And ȝaf it to thre hondred vultures to *atynge.*"—*Trevisa,*
      III. p. 131.   Caxton's version has "*for to ete.*"
"Also he fonde up . . newe manere titles and strikes to write
      amonge the lettres that were listere *in wrytinge* and *to
      spekynge.*"—*Ib.* III. p. 249.

That the participle in -nde could be confounded with the inf.
in -en is seen in the following passage : –

" But thanke God of heuen for that he hath the ȝeuene
   And so thou schalt, my douȝtir, a good lijf *lyvande.*"
                                        Babees Book, p. 43.

Participles.

207. The **present** participle is formed by the suffix
-ing, which has replaced M.E. -inde, -ende ; O.E.
-end.

The modern form -ing made its appearance in the
Southern dialects in the latter part of the twelfth cen-
tury ; but the older form in *-ande* was retained in the
Northern dialects up to a very late period.   (Cp. Ben
Jonson's *Sad Shepherd,* ii. 2).   Spenser has the archaic
forms *glitterand* and *trenchand* for *glittering* and *tren-
chant.*

This change of -inde to -ing has caused great
confusion between verbal nouns in -ing (O.E. -ung)
and participles in -ing (see p. 133).

       " Wommen ȝeueth lyf and *fedynde* to Kynges."
                                   Trevisa, III. p. 183.
   Here *fedynde* = *feeding* = *sustenance.*   See *O.E. Hom.* II.
p. 177, l. 23.

The **Passive** participle in the oldest period had
refix ge, which, after the Norman Conquest, was

reduced to (**i, y, e**). Milton has *yclept* = *called.*
He wrongly adds it to a present participle in "star
y-pointing."

The passive participle of all strong verbs ended in
-en. In the thirteenth century we find **n** falling
away; as, *ifunde* = *found; ibunde* = *bound;* very
many of our strong verbs have lost their passive parti-
ciples, and others at one time showed a tendency to
do the same. Cp. *spoke* and *eat* in Shakspeare, for
spoken and *eaten.*

The passive participle of weak verbs ended in -d;
as, lov-e-d. The primitive form was -th, which is
still preserved in un-cou-th, literally *unknown;*
couth (O.E. cuth) being the p.p. of can.

The adjectival character of the verbal suffixes -en (-n) and -ed,
is seen by comparing them with the endings in *gold-en, silken; hot-
headed, one-eyed,* &c.

Anomalous Verbs.

208. Be. The conjugation of the substantive verb
contains three distinct roots, as, be, was.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	Sing.		Plur.
1.	am	1.	are
2.	art	2.	are
3.	is	3.	are

Past Tense.

	Sing.		Plur.
1.	was	1.	were
2.	wast, wert*	2.	were
3.	was	3.	were

* Obsolete.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1, 2, 3. be		1, 2, 3. be

Past Tense.

1, 2, 3. were		1, 2, 3. were
2. wert		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. be		2. be

Infinitive	to be
Present Participle	being
Passive Participle	been

The oldest forms are :—

Pres. indic. sing.		1.	eo-m, beo-m, beo
		2.	ear-t, bis-t
		3.	is, bi-th
	Plural 1, 2, 3.		sind, sind-on
			beo-th
			ar-on
Past indic. sing.		1.	wæs
		2.	wǽre
		3.	wæs
,, ,, plur.		1, 2, 3.	wǽr-on
Pres. subj. sing.		1, 2, 3.	wes-e, beo, sî
,, ,, plur.		1, 2, 3.	wes-en, beo-n, sî-n
Past. subj. sing.		1, 2, 3.	wǽr-e
,, ,, plur.		1, 2, 3.	wǽr-en
Imper. sing.		2.	wes, beo
,, plur.		2.	wes-ath, beo-th
	Infin.		wes-an, beo-n
	Act. part.		wes-ende
	Pass. part.		gewes-en

In the thirteenth century sindon (are) gives place to **beoth**, or beth. In M. E. are becomes very common.

Wesan (infin.) seems to have dropped out of use in the twelfth century, leaving beon or **ben** as the ordinary form in use. About the same time **gewesen** (p.p.) disappeared, and a new p.p. ibeon (ben) came into use.

In M. E. we find the pres. part. be-ende = *be-ing.*

Negative forms were common in the first three periods. Cp. O.E. neom (am not), neart (art not), nis (is not), næs (was not), næron (were not).

A-m (= *ar-m* = *as-m*) contains the root **as**, and **m**, the ending of the first person.

Ar-t (= *as-t*) has the old -t of the second person, as in *shal-t, wil-t,* &c.

Is (= *as* = *as-th*) has lost its suffix -th.

Are (= *ase*) represents the old Northern **ar-on**, and is of Scandinavian origin. It has altogether replaced the O.E. *sind.*

Was. This is the past tense of the strong verb, **wesan** *to be.* It has therefore no endings to mark the first and third persons.

Was-t. The true form would be **were** (O.E. *wære*) but **wast** arose in the fourteenth century, through the use of **was** as a second person in Northern writers of the thirteenth century.

> " With ropes *were* thou bounde."
> > FABYAN, *Chronicle,* p. 430.
> " How *were* thow than baptized ?"
> > MERLIN, p. 428.
> " Before the sun, before the heavens thou *wert."*
> > MILTON, *Par. Lost.*

Wer-t for wast has evidently been formed from the older *were* (= *wære*). It has established itself as a subjunctive form.

Were (= *wes-en*) has, like are, lost its personal endings.

The root *be* was conjugated in the present tense, indicative, as late as Milton's time.

I be	we be	(bin)*
thou beest	ye be	,,
he be	they be	,,

" If thou *beest* he."—MILTON, *P. L.* I. 84.

" If thou *be'st* civil."
                              BEAUMONT and FLETCHER, I. p. 96.

" I think it *be* thine indeed."—*Hamlet.*

" We *are* true men, we *are* no spies, we *be* twelve brethren."
—*Gen.* xlii. 32.

" For you *be* as untrue as I."
                              HEYWOOD, *The Four P.P.*

" The Philistines *be* upon thee."—*Judges*, xvi. 9.

In M. E. beth and bes are used for the third pers. sing. indic.; and for the third pers. future, instead of our *shall be.*

209. **Worth** = *be.*
This verb occurs in the English Bible.

" Wo *worth* the day "
= woe be to the day.—*Ezek.* xxx. 2.

" Wo *worth* the faire gemme vertuelesse !
Wo *worth* that herb also that doth no boote !
Wo *worth* that beauté that is routheles !
Wo *worth* that wyght that tret ech under foote ! "
                              CHAUCER, *Tr. & Cr.* II. 49. ll. 344-7.

The O.E. *weorthan* (pret. *wearth*, p.p. *worden*) *to become*, occasionally replaced *wesan* and *beon, to be.* In M E. *worthe* = *to be*, as well as *to become.* In the third person **worth** = *shall be.*

" What shal *worthe* of us."—*M. Arth.* l. 1817, ed. Furnivall.

" For-þi I conseille alle þe comune to lat the catte *worthe.*"
                              Piers Plowman, B. Prol. l. 187.

" To-morwe *worth* ymade þe maydenes bruydale."
                              Ib. II. l. 43.

" This maide *werth* a slepe."—*Early Eng. Poems*, xxi. 38.

* * Archaic.

210. Can.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1. can		1. can
2. canst		2. can
3. can		3. can

Past Tense.

1. could		1. could
2. couldst (couldest)		2. could
3. could		3. could

In O.E. **can** was thus conjugated :—

		Sing.		Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1.	can, con	1.	cunn-on
	2.	can-st	2.	,,
	3.	can	3.	,,
Past Indic.	1.	cu-the	1.	cu-th-on
	2.	cu-th-est	2.	,,
	3.	cu-the	3.	,,
Pres. Subj. 1, 2, 3.		cunn-e	1, 2, 3.	cunn-on
Past Subj. 1, 2, 3.		cu-the	1, 2, 3.	cu-th-on
Pass. Part.		cu-th	Infin.	cunn-an

Can (1st and 3rd persons) has no personal suffix, because it was originally a strong form signifying *I knew.* Cp. *shall, may, wot,* &c.

Coul-d (= O.E. *cu-the,* M.E. *couthe, cou-de*) is a weak form. The letter l has crept in from false analogy to the past tenses of *shall* and *will.*

" And the Normans ne *couthe* speke tho bote hor owe speche."
    —*Spec. of E. Eng.* I. A. 215.

The verb **can** (con) once signified *to be able, to know.*

" Thou shalt never *conne* knowen."

<div align="right">CHAUCER.</div>

" Thou schalt not *kunne* seie nay."

<div align="right">PECOCK, *Skeat's Spec.* p. 50</div>

" I *can* many a quaint game."

<div align="right">*The World and the Child, O.E. Plays,* i. p. 245.</div>

" I trow thou *canst* but little skill of play."—*Ib.* i. p. 261.

" For we be clerks all, and *can* our neck verse."

<div align="right">HICKSCORNER, *O.E. Plays,* i. p. 159.</div>

" A mous that moche good *couthe* (knew)."

<div align="right">*Piers Plowman,* B. p. 8.</div>

" O she *could* the art of woman most feelingly."

<div align="right">WEBSTER, ed. Dyce, p. 250.</div>

Shakespeare has "to *con* thanks" = *to acknowledge* or *give thanks.*

" I *can* thee thank."—*The Four Elements, O.E. Plays,* i. p. 47.

" So give me som thynge that I may *conne* the thanke for."

<div align="right">*Merlin,* p. 73.</div>

" Lutel thonk ye me *cuthe.*"—*O.E. Misc.* p. 81, l. 274.

" Thai *conned* [*cund* C.] him ful litel thank."

<div align="right">*Cursor Mundi,* F. l. 6398.</div>

Con, *learn, study* (*con* a lesson), has conned for past tense and p.p.

Cunning (adj.) = *knowing,* is a present participle of **can,** or **con.** It is also found as an abstract noun = *knowledge.*

" And yhit thai er ful *unkunand.*"

<div align="right">HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 152.</div>

" *Cunning* Latin books."

<div align="right">*The Four Elements, O.E. Plays,* i. 7.</div>

" Works of *cunning.*"—*Ib.*

" Nother (neither) virtue nor no other *cunning.*"

<div align="right">*Ib.* p. 22.</div>

Couth in uncouth is the old p.p. of can. See Chaucer's *C. T. Prol.* l. 14.

" Mayde to the he send (sends) his sonde (message)
   And wilneth (wishes) for to beo (be) the *cuth* (known)."

<div align="right">*O.E. Misc.* p. 96, l. 104.</div>

211. Dare.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1. dare		1. dare
2. darest (dar'st)		2. dare
3. dares (dare)		3. dare

Past Tense.

1. durst		1. durst
2. durst		2. durst
3. durst		3. durst

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	*Past Tense.*
Sing. 1, 2, 3. dare	Sing. 1, 2, 3. durst
Plur. 1, 2, 3. dare	Plur. 1, 2, 3. durst

Old English conjugation of **Dare.**

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. dear	1. durr-on
	2. dears-t	2. ,,
	3. dear	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. dors-te	1. dors-t-on
	2. dors-t-est	2. ,,
	3. dors-te	3. ,,
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. durr-e	1, 2, 3. durr-on
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. dors-te	1, 2, 3. dorst-on
Inf.	durr-an	

Dare. The root is *dars*, which appears in the past tense, **durst.**

The old 3rd person singular **dare** (M.E. *dar*) has given place to **dares**, the former being used only in

the subjunctive mood. Cp. *Tempest*, iii. 2, *Rich. II.*
v. 5.

Dare, *to challenge*, makes a new past tense and
p.p. dared. Cp. owe, ought, and owed.

212. Shall.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Plur.
1. shall	1. shall
2. shalt	2. shall
3. shall	3. shall

Past Tense.

1. should	1. should
2. shouldst, shouldest	2. should
3. should	3. should

Shall was conjugated in O.E. as follows :—

		Sing.		Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1.	sceal	1.	scul-on
	2.	sceal-t	2.	,,
	3.	sceal	3.	,,
Past Indic.	1.	sceol-de	1.	sceol-d-on
	2.	sceol-d-est	2.	,,
	3.	sceol-de	3.	,,
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3.	scyl-e	1, 2, 3.	scyl-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3.	sceol-de	1, 2, 3.	sceol-d-on
Infin.		scul-an		

One of the oldest senses of shall is *owe*.

" And by that feith I *shal* to God and yow."
                    CHAUCER, *Tr. and Cr.* l. 1600

> " Voryef me thet ich the *ssel*."
> = Forgive me that I owe thee.
> > *Ayenbite*, p. 115.
> " Hu micel *scealt* thû."
> = How much owest thou.
> > *Luke* xvi. 5.
> " Ân, se hym *sceolde* tŷn thûsend punda."
> = One that owed him ten thousand pounds.
> > *Matt.* xviii. 24.

Another early meaning arising from the notion of debt is obligation, necessity; hence **shall** often signifies *ought, must.*

> " Be ûre æ he *sceal* sweltan."
> = By our law he ought to die.
> > *John* xix. 7.
> " Men seyn, sche *schalle* endure in that forme."
> > MAUNDEVILLE, p. 4.
> " Thou *shalt* not steal."
> " You *should* listen more attentively."

It must be recollected that **shall** is only a tense auxiliary, that is a sign of the future, in the *first* person. The following doggerel lines point out the distinctive uses of **shall** and **will.**

> " In the first person simply **shall** foretells,
> In will a threat, or else a promise dwells ;
> Shall, in the second and the third, does threat ;
> Will simply then foretells a future feat."

Grimm supposes that the original meaning of **shal** is *I have killed,* I must pay the fine or *(wergeld)* ; hence, I am obliged, I must. The idea of *failure, offence, guilt,* is seen in Sansk. *skhal, to fail ;* Lat. *scelus, fault, crime.*

A strange mingling of *should* and *owe* occurs in Fabyan's *Chronicle,* p. 257.

> " Obedience that he *should owe* (= owed) to the see of Can-
> terbury."

213. Will.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1. will		1. will
2. wilt		2. will
3. will		3. will

Past Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1. would		1. would
2. wouldst		2. would
3. would		3. would

O.E. conjugation of will.

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. wile, wille	1. will-ath
	2. wil-t	2. ,,
	3. wile	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. wol-de	1. wol-d-on
	2. wol-d-est	2. ,,
	3. wol-de	3. ,,

Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. wille	1, 2, 3. will-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. wol-de	1, 2, 3. wol-d-on
Infin.	will-an	Pres. Part. will-ende

The original meaning of **will** is *to desire, wish* (cp. Lat. *volo*).

In M.E. we find a form **wol**, *will*, which still survives in **won't** = *wol not*. **Nill** = *will not*, occurs in *Hamlet*, v. 1 ; *Taming of the Shrew*, ii. 1.

In O.E. we find two weak verbs, **willan** and **willian,** *to desire, wish.* **Willan** survives in the verb **will,** *to desire, be*

willing, to exercise the will, which is conjugated regularly as an independent verb: 1. will, 2. willest, 3. willeth, wills, &c., past tense willed. But we often find in the older periods the two forms mixed up.

> " Wel aʒte ihc *willen* hire to wif."
> > *Fl. and Bl.* p. 67.

> " They ne shuld not *willen* so."
> > CHAUCER, R. 6923.

> " Gif thu *wilt*, thu miht me geclænsian : Ic *wille* ; beo ge-
> > clænsod."

> =" If thou *wilt*, thou mayest make me clean. I *will ;* be
> > cleansed."—*Matt.* viii. 2, 3.

> " Abraham *wald* in his liue,
> > That Ysaac had wed a wiue."
> > > *Cursor Mundi*, G. l. 3215.

> " Abraham *willed* in his lyue,
> > That Isaac hadde weddede a wyue."
> > > *Ib.* T.

> " For in evil, the best condition is not to *will ;* the second,
> > not to *can.*"—BACON, *Ess.* xi.

The old p.p. wold for wild, or willed, was in use as late as the beginning of the sixteenth century.

> " The fomy bridel with the bitte of gold,
> > Governeth he ryght as himselfe hath *wolde.*"
> > > CHAUCER, *Leg. Didonis*, l. 284.

> " How be it he myghte have entred the cytie if he had
> > *wolde.* (= wished).—FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 625.

214. May.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.	
1.	may	1.	may
2.	mayst, mayest	2.	may
3.	may	3.	may

Past Tense.

Sing.		Plur.	
1.	might	1.	might
2.	mightst, mightest	2.	might
3.	might	3.	might

The oldest forms of may are :—

		Sing.		Plur.	
Pres. Indic.		1.	mæg	1.	mâgon
		2.	meah-t	2.	,,
		3.	mæg.	3.	,,
Past. Indic.		1.	meah-te	1.	meah-t-on
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3.		mâge	1, 2, 3.	mâg-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3.		meah-te	1, 2, 3.	meah-t-on
Infin. **mag-an**		Pres. Part. mæg-ende.		Pass. Part. meah-t	

The **y** in **may** represents an older **g** (cp. Ger. *mögen*). Sometimes **g** passes into **w**, hence the M.E. I **mow**, *I may;* I **mought**, *I might;* pres. part. **mowende**, **mowynge**; pass. part. **moght**.

Mayst is a new form that arose in M.E. for **mih-t**, (See Chaucer's *Astrolabe*, p. 3).

May has the force of the Lat. *posse, to be able*. It is the preterite of an old root mag, to *increase, grow*, which exists in mai-n, (O.E. mæg-en), migh-t.

> " Helle gatu ne *mâgon* ongeân þe."
> = Hell's gates *cannot prevail* against thee.
> *Matt.* xvi. 18.

> " Thatt ifell gast *maȝȝ* oferr tha
> Thatt follȝhen barrness thæwess."
> = The evil ghost *has power* over those that follow bairns' habits.
> *Orm.* I. p. 279.

> " If thou *maist* ony thing, help us."
> Wickliffe, *Mark* ix. 4.

> " Thai salle *mow* passe aywhare thai wille."
> Hampole, *P. of C.* l. 799 ȝ.

" As nere as they shall *mowe* (be able)."

> *Nat. MSS. I.* 20, *Hen. VII.* Quoted in
> Earle's Phil. of Eng. Tongue, p. 284.

" To lakken *mowynge* (power) to done yuel."

> CHAUCER, *Boethius*, ed. Morris, p. 124.

215. Owe.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
owe		1. owe
2. owest		2. owe
3. oweth		3. owe

Past Tense.

Sing.		Plur.
1. ought		1. ought
2. oughtest		2. ought
3. ought		3. ought

Inf. owe   Pres. Part. owing

O.E. forms of Owe :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. âh	1. âg-on
	2. âg-e	2. ,,
	3. âh	3. ,,
Past Indic.	1. âh-te	1, 2, 3. âh-t-on

Infin. âg-an ; Pres. Part. âg-ende ; Pass. Part. âg-en.

In M.E. we find some new forms, as, owest (= âge); ought and owed (= agen, p.p.).

The original meaning of owe is *to possess, have;* whence the secondary notion, *to have as a duty, to owe, to be under an obligation.*

Oughte is of course a weak past tense, and is now

used as a present and past tense to signify moral obligation.

When **owe** signifies to be in debt, it is conjugated regularly.

1. **Owe,** 2. **owest,** 3. **owes, oweth,** &c. ; past tense and p.p. **owed.**

Ought, in older writers, is used as the past tense of **owe,** *to be in debt.*

> " Thu ɜulde thet thou *ouhtest.*"
> = Thou didst pay what thou didst *owe.*
>
> > *Ancren Riwle,* p. 406.
>
> " He *owɜte* to him 10,000 talents."
>
> > WICKLIFFE, *Matt.* xviii. 24.
>
> "One of his fellow servants which *ought* him an hundred
>   pence."—BECON, I. 154.
>
> " There of the Knight, the which that castle *ought,*
>   To make abode that night he greatly was besought."
>
> > SPENSER, *F. Q.* VI. iii. 2.

See Shakspeare's 1 *Henry IV.* iii. 3.

Own is a derivative of **owe.**

Examples of **owe** as an independent verb :—

> " Hwæt dô ic thæt ic êce lîf *âge ?* "
> = What must I do that I may have everlasting life ?
>
> > *Mark,* x. 17.
>
> " *Ahte* ic geweald."
> = Had I power.—*Cæd.* p. 23, l. 32.
> " The mon the lutel *ah.*"
> = The man that has little.—*Laɜ.* 3058.
> " To makien hire cwen of al thet he *ouhte.*"
> = To make her queen of all that he possessed. ·
>
> > *Ancren Riwle,* p. 390.
>
> " Steuen that the lond *auht.*"
>
> > R. OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle,* l. 3092.
>
> " Ye shal *owe* and have everlasting life."
>
> > *Gest. Rom.* p. 29.

" I am not worthy of the wealth I *owe.*"
                                        All's Well that Ends Well, II. 5.
" *Owing* her heart, what need you doubt her ear."
                                        FORD.

Owe as an auxiliary appears in Laʒamon's Brut, l. 8289,
" he *ah* to don" = *he has to do, he should do.*

    " Euel *owe* no mon to do to other."
                                        Cursor Mundi, T. l. 1973.

216. Must.

Must was originally the past tense of the old verb,
motan (Ger. *müssen*) *to be able, be obliged :* it is now
used in all persons and tenses, to denote necessity
and obligation.

The O.E. forms are :—

		Sing.	Plur.	
Pres. Indic.	1.	môt	1.	mô-t-on
	2.	môs t	2.	,,
	3.	môt	3.	,,
Past Indic.	1.	môs-te	1, 2, 3.	môs-t-on

The old verb **mot** had the sense of *may, can, must,*
&c. ; and **must** = *might, could,* &c.

In the sense of *may, mot* is found as late as 1522
in *The World and the Child.*

    " But, Sir Frere, evil *mot* thou the [thrive]."
                                        O.E. Plays, ed. Hazlitt, p. 257.

Spenser occasionally employs it though it had
become archaic in his time (see *Faerie Queene,*
i. 2, 37).

The s in **must** does not belong to the root, but was inserted
to unite the suffix -t of the second person, and -te of the past
tense to the root ; **most** (second person) = mot-s-t = mot-t.

O.E. wàst (knowest) = wat-s-t ; mo-s-te (past tense) =
mot-s-te = mot-te ; O.E. wiste (knew) = wit-s-te = wit-te.

217. Wit.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	Sing.		Plur.
1.	wot	1.	wot
2.	wot [wottest] [1]	2.	wot
3.	wot [wotteth]	3.	wot

Past Tense.

1.	wist [wotted]	1.	wist [wotted]
2.	wist	2.	wist [wotted]
3.	wist [wotted]	3.	wist [wotted]

Inf. to wit   Pres. Part. witting [wotting]

The O.E. *witan* was thus conjugated :—

		Sing.		Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1.	wât	1.	wit-on
	2.	wâs-t	2.	,,
	3.	wât	1, 2, 3.	,,
Past Indic.	1.	wis-te		wis-t-on
Infin. wit-an.	Pres. Part. wit-ende.		Pass. Part. wit-en.
			[M.E. iwis-t].

Wot was originally the perfect of the root **wit** (cp. Lat. *video*, Gr. οἶδα, *I know*, from ἴδειν, *to see*), and meant " I have seen," hence " I know."

Its infinitive to **wit** is used now only as an adverb = *namely*.

The pres. part. exists in **wittingly**.

For the presence of **s** in **wist**, see **must**, § 216, p. 181.

---

[1] The words in brackets are later formations.

The pass. part. appears in **unwist**, *unknown*, *undiscovered* (Surrey); and in the old proverb, "beware of *had-I-wist*," *i.e.* "beware of saying regretfully *had I known*."

> "Dead long ygoe, I *wote*, thou haddest bin."
>> SPENSER, *F. Q.* i. 2, 20.
>> See *Gen.* xxi. 26.

> "But *wottest* thou what I say, man."
>> *The World and the Child, O.E. Plays,* I. p. 264.

"Again, who *wotteth* not what words were spoken against St. Paul."—JEWEL's *Apol.* ed. Jelf, p. 3. See *Gen.* xxxix. 8.

"He *wist* not what to say."—*Mark* ix. 6.

"And why he left your court, the gods themselves, *wotting* no more than I, are ignorant."—*Winter's Tale,* iii. 2.

> "I do thee well *to wit.*"
>> J. HEYWOOD, *the Pardoner and the Friar.*

"Wouldest thou *wit?* "—*Everyman, O.E. Plays,* I. p. 103.

"For, *wit* thou well, thou shalt make none attorney."—*Ib.*

"I woll handle my captive so,
  That he shall not well *wot* wither to go."
>> *Jack Juggler, O.E. Plays,* II. p. 115.

218. **Do,** in " this will **do,**" has the sense of the Lat. *valere.* It represents the O.E. **dugan,** E.E. **duhen,** *avail, be good,* (Ger. *taugen*) cp. *doughty = valiant.*

<div align="center">O.E. dug-an.</div>

Pres. Indic. Sing.		1.	deâh
		2.	dug-e
		3.	deâh
,, ,, Plur.	1, 2, 3.		dug-on
Past. Indic. Sing.			doh-te

"Ring ne broche nabbe ȝe…ne no swuch thing thet ou ne *deih* [= *deah*]."

= Have neither ring nor broach, nor any such thing that *is* not *good* for you to have.—*Ancren Riwle,* p. 421.

> "And saŭ that his dede litel *doht* [= *did,* availed]."
>> *Met. Hom.* p. 149.

> " What *dowes* me the dedayn."
> = What avails me the displeasure.
>> *Allit. Poems*, p. 90.
> " That noȝt *dowed* bot the deth in the depe stremez."
> · That nought availed, but the death in the deep streams.
>> *Ib.* p. 47.

219. Own = *grant, confess*, has probably arisen out of O.E. an, (E.E. on) = *I grant*, unn-on, *we grant;* O.E. unnan (Ger. gönnen), *to grant.*

> " Ich *on* wel that ȝe witen."
> = I own well that ye know.—*Kath.* 1761.
> " ȝif thu hit wel *unnest.*"
> = If thou well concedest it.—*Ancren Riwle*, p. 282.

220. Mun = *shall, must.*

> " I *mun* be married a Sunday."
>> *Ralph Roister Douster, before* 1553.

In the fourteenth century *mun (mon)* as an auxiliary verb = *shall, must*, was very common in the Northern dialects.

> " I *mun* walke on mi way."—*Ant. Arth.* xxv. 3.
> "——than *mon* he gyf lyght
> Als fer als the sone dose and ferrer."
>> HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* p. 246.
> " Thai thoght that kynd him *mond* forbede."
> = They thought that nature would forbid him.
>> *C. Mundi*, C. l. 1105.

The original meaning of *mun, mon*, was *I have remembered;* hence, *I intend, mind.*

	Pres.	Perf.	Inf.
O.E.	ge-man	ge-munde	ge-munan (meminisse)
Icel.	man }	munda }	muna (recordari)
	mun }	munna }	munu } (μάλλειν)
			muudu }

" The hertes costes we agen to *munen.*"
= We ought to remember the hart's habits.

<div align="right">*O.E. Misc.* p. 12. l. 370.</div>

" He wolde *mone.*"
= He would remember.

<div align="right">R. OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle,* l. 4811.</div>

221. The verb need, when followed by an infinitive, some-
times loses its personal ending -s, as " it *need*[1] not be."

In O.E. to need meant only to *compel, force;* but from a
primitive *thurfan* (Ger. *dürfen*) *to need,* was formed the fol-
lowing :—

Pres. Indic. Sing.			
		1. thearf	I need
		2. thearf-t	Thou needest
		3. thearf	He needs
,,	,, Plur.	1, 2, 3. thurf-on	We need, &c.

In M.E. we find *thar* for *tharf.*

" Have thou ynough, what *thar* the recche or care."
= If thou have enough, why needeth thee reck or care.

<div align="right">CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 5911</div>

Auxiliary Verbs.

222. Auxiliary verbs supply the places of verbal
suffixes to form voice, mood, and tense.

The passive voice is expressed by the passive par-
ticiple, and the verb **to be.**

In O.E. *weorthan* and *wesan* were used with the passive par-
ticiple to form the passive voice.

Should and **would** are often used as signs of the
subjunctive mood.

The use of *would,* as an auxiliary of the past subjunctive, is as
early as the thirteenth century.

---

[1] Some explain *need* as subjunctive = *would need;* but cp.
me thinc in M.E. for *me-thinks.*

Let is a sign of the imperative mood, as, *let* us go = *go we.* See § 180, p. 132. In M.E. *let* was used in the same way as *do = cause, make.*

The tense auxiliaries are (1) **have, had**; and **is, was** (with intransitive verbs) for the perfect tenses; as, "he *has asked*," "he *is come.*"

(2) **Shall** and **will** for the future; but other shades of a future tense may be expressed by various modes, as, "I *am going* to see him;" "I *am about* to see him;" "I *am upon the point* of seeing him," &c.

(3) **Do** and **did** are used for forming emphatic tenses, as, "I *do* see," "I *did* see."

Do and **did** originally had a *causative* sense before another verb in the infinitive.

> "Thou most *do* me it have."
> = Thou must *cause* me to have it.
> > *Gamelyn,* l. 159.
> "And som-tyme *doth* Theseus hem to reste."
> = And sometimes Theseus *makes* them to rest.
> > *Knightes Tale.*

In the fourteenth century **did** was not uncommon as a mere tense auxiliary.

> "Summe gouleden and summe *dude* brenne."
> = Some yelled and others did burn.—*O.E. Misc.* p. 224.

In M.E. **gan, can, con** (began) was used for did.

> "His stede he *gan* bistride
> And forth he *gan* ride."—*Horn.* p. 22.
> "Hi *gunnen* ut ride,
> > And funden on a grene
> > A geaunt."—*Ib.* p. 22.
> "Gret ioi *can* his frendes mak[e]."
> > *Cursor Mundi,* C. l. 3016.
> "Criste of hym his crowne *con* take."
> > *Pol. Rel. and Love Poems,* p. 97, l. 121.

CHAPTER XI.

Adverbs.

223. Adverbs are, for the most part, abbreviations of words or phrases, or cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns.

According to their origin or form, we may divide them into the following classes :—

224. I. Adverbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives.

Genitive.—Need-s = *of necessity;* M.E. *nedes;* E.E. *nêde* (instr.).

A-night-s, now-a-day-s, al-way-s, be-time-s, el-se (O.E. *elles*), eft-soon-s, un-a-ware-s, on-ce, twi-ce, thri-ce, whil-s-t, a-mid-s-t, a-mong-s-t, be-twi-x-t.

Twice = O.E. *twi-wa,* E.E. *twi-e,* M.E. *twies;* thrice ⁼ O.E. *thri-wa,* E.E. *thrie,* M.E. *thries; -wa = -war = time;* once, O.E. *æne,* E.E. *ene,* M.E. *an-es, on-es, an-s, on-s.*

The -st in *whilst,* &c. represents an older -es(-s). Cp. M.E. *whil-es, amidd-es, among-es,* &c.

Dative.—Whil-om (O.E. *hwil-um*), from *while = time.* Seld-om (O.E. *seld-um*) from O.E. *seld = rare.*

All adverbs ending in -meal once had the dative suffix -um. Cp. O.E. *lim-mæl-um* = *limb-meal.* The suffix *-um* formed distributives like Latin -im. Cp. M.E. *table-mele* =. Latin tabillatim.—Palladius on *Husbondrie,* p. 66.

Little by little = M.E. *lytlum* and *lytlum.*

Accusative.—Alway (O.E. *ealne-weg*), otherwise, sometime, the while, now-a-day, backward, &c.

Prepositional Forms.—The chief prepositions used to form adverbial expressions are, a, (an), on, in, at, of, be, (by), to.

An = *in, on:* anon = *in one second.* In M.E. we find *on-an* = *anon.*

A = *in, on:* a-bed, a-day, a-sleep, a-loft, &c. ; a-broad, a-cold, a-good, a-twain, &c.

On, in : on sleep, **on** high, in-deed, in vain, **in** short, in two, &c.

At : at jar, at odds, at large, at night, at length, at best, at first, &c.

Of (for **a**) : of kin, of late, of old, of new ; **Of** (for older genitives), of a truth, of right.

Be, by : be-times, be-cause, **by** turns, **by** degrees, **by** hundreds.

To : to-day, to-night, to-gether.

Per : per-chance, per-haps.

An (=in, on) occurs in E.E. and M.E. before words beginning with a *vowel* or *h;* as, *an eve, in the evening ; an honde, in hand.*

A is used before words beginning with a consonant.

"Ich am nu elder than ich was *a* wintre and *a* lore."—*O.E. Hom.* ii. 220.

This *a* was a separate word as late as the seventeenth century. It is very common before verbal nouns. Cp. a-fishing, a-hunting, a-weeping.

As on is only another form of an, it has replaced *an* before a vowel.

> " Set our teeth *an* edge [= *on* edge]. "
>
> > *The Four Book of Princes,* p. 116.

A and on, sometimes occur side by side : a-board and on board, a-ground and on ground.

An takes the place of in, in the phrase "ever and anon ; " where *an-on* = M. E. in *oon,* in one state.

> " *Ever in oon.*"—CHAUCER, *Astrolabe,* p. 15.
>
> " Ever and *anon* it (earth) must turn about."
>
> > HOLLAND's *Pliny,* p. 1.

Sometimes *an end* = *in oon* = *continually.*

As of takes the place of a in *akin,* &c. so a sometimes takes the place of of.

" I have heard *a* the horses walking *a'* (on) the top of Paules." —DEKKER, *Satiromastix,* C. 2.

" What manner *a* man."—BECON.

Cp. "*a* the appel tre" = *o* that appel tre = of the apple tree.—*C. Mundi,* p. 86.

This a for o or of explains ; man-*a*-war, justice-*a*-peace (Dekker) ; two-*a*-clock = two *o'* clock = two *of* the clock ; jack-*an*-apes.

In M.E. we find *of* long, *of* new, *of*-fer (afar), and even *of goo* = *ago* (cp. O.E. *of-gán,* to go off).

Be sometimes preceded the dative adverb in O.E. as *be án-fealdum* = *by one fold* = *singly,* from which we have formed our expressions, *by hundreds* and *by fifties* = O.E. *be hundredum* and *be fíftegum.* In E.E. the dative ending dropped, and we have *bi sixe, bi seove,* = by *sixes,* by *sevens,* &c. Cp. *by piecemeal* for *piecemeal,* (Beaumont and Fletcher).

At especially before superlatives is a contraction of *at the,* M.E. *atte.* In O.E. this *the* was in the dative case. *At random* = Fr. *à randon.*

225. Many adjectives are used as adverbs, especially those with irregular comparisons : *far, forth, ful, ill, late, little, much, nigh, near, well.*

Many monosyllabic adjectives are used as adverbs, as, to work **hard**; to talk **fast**; to speak **loud**; to aim **high**.

In the earlier stages of the language, the *adverbial* form was marked by a final -e, as, *hard* (adj.), *hard*-e (adv.), &c.   When this -e became silent, then the adjectival and adverbial form became identical.

We can thus easily understand the use of *godly* as adjective and adverb; (cp. "a *godly* life," and "to live *godly*.")   In O.E. the distinction was plainly marked, *e.g.*, *god*-lic (adj.), *god*-lic-e (adv.).

The adverbial -e was probably a *dative* suffix.   In M.E. we find instances of the use of this -e: they pleye *hastiliche* and *swiftliche* (Trevisa).

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, the suffix -ly was often dropped: as,

" *Foolish* bold."   " *Grievous* sick."
              BECON.   SHAKESPEARE.

Cp. " *Wondrous* wise."

The history of *wondrous* (wonderfully) is a curious one.   In O.E. the adverb was *wundr-um*, which in M.E. became *wunder*, *wonder*, T.E. *wonders*.   In E.E. we find *wunderliche*, in M.E. *wonderli;* and in T.E. *wondersly*.   In Ford's works we find " *woundy* bad," *i.e. wonderfully* or *very bad*.

226. II. Pronominal Adverbs.

Many adverbs are derived from the pronominal stems, the, he, who.

PRONOMINAL STEMS.	PLACE WHERE.	MOTION TO.	MOTION FROM.	TIME WHEN.	MANNER.	CAUSE.
who	where	whither	whence	when	how	why
the	there	thither	thence	then	thus	the
he	here	hither	hence	—	—	—

The suffixes -re and -ther in *the-re, he-re, whe-re, thi-ther*, &c., were originally locative.

The -n in *the-n, whe-n,* &c., is an accusative suffix. See pronouns, § 131, p. 107 ; § 146, p. 119.

The -ce (M.E. -es), in *then-ce,* &c., represents an older -an, cp. O.E. *than-an* (thence); *heon-an* (hence); *hwan-an* (whence).

The O.E. -an denotes motion from : *eäst-an =from the east ;* so *thence = than-an = from that* (place).

The, before comparatives, as, the *more* (= O.E. *thî mâre,* Lat. *eo magis*) is the instrumental case of the definite article, the.

Lest has lost the instrumental the. In O.E. we find *thŷ læs the,* E.E. *les the,* M.E. *leste* = lest.

Thus is the instrumental case of this.

How (O.E. *hu,* E.E. *hwu*), and why (O.E. *hwî*), are the inst. cases of who. Cp. *for-why = for which* (reason), *wherefore; for-thy = for that* (reason), *therefore.*

Yea, ye-s, ye-t, are from a relative stem ya, which also had a demonstrative force, as in yon, yond, yonder.

That and so are often used as *affirmative* adverbs.

In nay, no, not, now, we have a demonstrative stem, na.

In O.E. *ne = not.*
 " Eart thû of thyses leorning-cnihtum ? *nic ne* eom ic."
 = Art thou of this man's disciples ? not I, I am not.
                                        John xviii. 17.
Negatives are often repeated for emphasis :—
 " *Ne nân ne* dorste *nân* thing âcsian."
 = No one durst ask him anything.
                        Matt. xxii. 46.

" *Ne* eom ic *nå* Crist."—*John* i. 18.

" But he *ne* lefte *n*ought for rayn *n*e thonder."

SHAUCER, *Prol.* l. 492.

O.E. ne was also a conjunction = nor. See Spenser, *Faerie Queene,* l. i. 28.

Not (= O.E. *nôht,* M.E. *noght, nat*) = *no whit,* (nothing), has replaced the old nâ, ne. It has already been shown to be an indefinite pronoun. See **aught,** § 164, p. 125.

" Ne wen thu *nawiht* leoue feder that tu affeare me swa
   = ne lef thu *nawt* leoue feader that tu offeare me swa.
   Ween thou not dear father that thou may frighten me
   so."—*Juliana,* pp. 12, 13.
" Ac hit ne helpeth heom *nowiht.*"—*O.E. Misc.* p. 152.

Aught, naught, nothing, something, some-what, muchwhat, anywhit, &c. may be used as adverbs.

So (= O.E. swâ) was used as a relative pronoun in E.E. ; from it we derive also (O.E. *ealswa*), which, by loss of l, has dwindled down to as = M.E. *ase* = E.E. *alse* = O.E. *eal-swa.*

Ay, sometimes used for yes, is the same as the adverb aye = *ever.*

For ever or aye we find in O.E. a ; E.E. o, oo, ay, ey. Cp. O.E. *å-hwær, æg-hwær* = *any-where;* E.E. *o-whar, eihwer.*

What (O.E. *hwæt*) = *why* (Lat. *quid*) is an adverb :—

' *What* do you prate of service ?"

SHAKESPEARE, *Cor.* iii. 3.

227. III. Adverbs formed from Prepositions.

Aft, in "fore and *aft;*" O.E. *æf-t-an,* after. Af is another form of **of** (= *from*). Cp. *af-ter, af-ter-wards.*

Be, by, *by and by, hard-by, be-sides, be-hind, b-ut be-neath,* &c.

For, *for-th, for-thwith, a-fore, forward* (= M.E. *forth-ward*).

Fro = *from;* "to and fro."

In, *with-in,* E.E. *in-with;* M.E. *bin* = O.E. *binnan* = *within.*

Neath, *be-neath, under-neath.*

Cp. *ne-ther;* O.E. *ni-ther,* and Sansk. *ni* = *down.*

On, *on-ward, on-wards.*

Of, *off; a-down* (O.E. *of dún* = *from the hill*). See **aft.**

To, *too; to-ward,* &c.

Through, *thorough, thoroughly, throughly.*

Up, *up-per, up-wards, upp-er-most.*

Out, *with-out, a-b-out, b-ut.* (See **Preposi-tions.** § 230, p. 195. § 231, p. 196.)

228. IV. Compound Adverbs.

Many are given under the head of **prepositional forms.** (See § 224, p. 188.)

There, here, and **where,** are combined with (1) prepositions, (2) adverbs, (3) indefinite pronouns to form compound adverbs:—*there-of, there-to, there-*

from, there-by, &c. ; *where-so-ever, where-ever,* &c. ;
else-where, some-where, no-where.

Everywhere = *ever-y-where,* E.E. *ever ihwar* (Ancren Riwle,
p. 200) ; *y-where* = E.E. *i-hwar, i-hwer* = O.E. *ge-hwær.* There
was a M.E. *eywhere, aywhere* (which was also combined with
ever) = O.E. *æg-hwær, everywhere.* Cp. O.E. *âhwær,* M.E.
awher, owher, owwhar = *anywhere.*

In O.E. we have very few compounds of *there, here,* and
where, with prepositions ; but they are numerous in E.E.

The pronominal adverbs and their compounds, as *where,
where-of, where-to,* have the force of relative pronouns.

The compounds of *there, here, where,* with prepositions are
almost all archaic.   We replace *there-of, there-to,* &c. by *of
that, of it, to that, to it,* &c. ; *where-of,* &c. by *of which,* &c.
and *here in,* &c. by *in this,* &c.

These compounds, being followed by the preposition, resemble
the construction of *that,* and the O.E. indeclinable relative *the.*

" Thæt bed *the* se lama *on* læg."
= The bed *that* the lame man lay *on.*
= The bed *whereon* [= on which] the lame man lay.

Mark ii. 4.

" The ston *that* he leonede *to.*"
= The stone *whereto* he leant.

Vernon MS.

Some elliptical expressions containing a verb are
used as adverbs, as *may-be, may-hap, how-be-it, as it
were, to be sure, to wit.*

CHAPTER XII.

Prepositions.

229. Prepositions are so named, because they were originally prefixed to the verb to modify its meaning. Many prepositions still preserve their *adverbial* meaning (cp. *for-swear*, *be-times*, &c.). Some relations denoted by prepositions may be expressed by case-endings. Prepositions are either **simple** or **compound.**

230. I. Simple Prepositions.

At (O.E. *æt;* Lat. *ad*).

By (O.E. *be, bi*). The original meaning is *about, concerning*. Another form of it is O.E. *umbe;* M.E. *umb, um;* cp. Gr. ἀμφί; Lat. *amb, am*.

For (O.E. *for*, Lat. *pro*).

Fro-m (O.E. *fram*).

Fro (E.E. *fra*).

The m in *from* is a superlative suffix. The roots for and fro are connected with each other, and with far and fore. Cp. Lat. *pro, per, præ*.

In, on (O.E. *in, on, an;* Gr. ἐν, Lat. *in*).

Of, off (O.E. *of* = *from;* Lat. *ab;* Gr. ἀπό).

Out (O.E. *út;* cp. *utter, utmost*).

To (O.E. *tó*). It has often the sense of "for."

Up (O.E. *up;* Lat. *s-ub*).

With (O.E. *with, wither,* from, against). We have preserved the original force of *with* in *with-stand* &c. The sense of the Lat. *cum* was usually expressed in O.E. by **mid**; Goth. *mith,* Gr. μέτα.

231. II. Compound Prepositions.

(1) COMPARATIVES.

Af-ter (O.E. *æf-ter*), is a comparative of the root af = of = *from*. The suffix -ter is the same as -ther in *whe-ther*, &c.

Ov-er (O.E. *of-er;* Goth. *uf-ar;* Lat. *s-uper;* Gr. ὑπέρ), is a comparative of the root of or uf. We have the same root in O.E. *ufe-weard;* E.E. *uve-weard = upward, a-b-ove*.

Un-der (O.E. *under;* Lat *inter*) contains the root in and the comparative suffix -der = -ther.

In E.E. *under = between; under that = between that; meanwhile.*

Through (O.E. *thur-h;* Gr. *dur-ch*), contains the same root as the Lat. *tra-ns,* from the root *thar* or *tar, to go beyond, to cross*.

(2) PREPOSITIONS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

B-ut (O.E. *b-ut-an, = be-ut-an, bi-ut-an*) = **be** (*by*) + ut (*out*).

A-b-out (O.E. *â-b-utan = â-be-utan*) = **a** (*on*) + **be** + **out**.

A-b-ove (O.E. *b-uf-an = be-uf-an*) = a (*on*) + **be** (*by*) + **ove** (*up*).

Unto (M.E. *until*), is a compound of **unt** and **to**. The same root exists in Goth. *und;* O.E. *ôth = onth = unto.*

In-to, up-on, be-fore, with-in, through-out, be-neath, under-neath, &c.

(3) PREPOSITIONS FORMED FROM NOUNS.

A-gain, a-gain-s-t (O.E. *on-geân, tô-gegnes*).

A-mong (O.E. *ge-mong, on-ge-mong;* E.E. *on-mang, bi-mong*), a = *on;* **mong** = *ming*-l-ing, mixing. Cp. E.E. *monglen, to mix; monglung = mingling.*

> Other prepositions of this sort are *in-stead of = in the place of,* (*stead* = place) = *in lieu of; in behalf of, by dint of, by way of, for the sake of; a-breast of, a-board, a-head of, a-cross, be-side; in spite of = in despite of.* Sometimes we find *my despite = in despite of me.* Cp. the use of *maugre* (Fr. malgré) in M.E. *maugre min, in spite of me; maugre thaires = in spite of them.*

(4) ADJECTIVE PREPOSITIONS.

E-re (O.E. *æ-r;* M.E. *er, ar, or*), *before.* See § 116. p. 95.

Or, the M.E. form **or** = **ar** = *ere* occurs in the authorised version of the Bible. See *Ps.* xc. 2 ; *Prov.* viii. 23.

Or ere (= *or er = er er*), is a mere reduplication, like *an if.* See *King John,* iv. 3 ; *Tempest,* i. 2 ;

Hamlet, i. 2.   It seems to have acquired the sense of *ere ever.*   See Wright's *Bible Word Book*, p. 353.

Till (O.E. *til* good; O.N. *til* to).   In M.E. we find **till** used as a sign of the infinitive; it formed numerous compounds as *intil* = *into*, &c.

Along (O.E. *and-lang;* E.E. *an-lang;* M.E. *ende-long, endelonges*).

We sometimes find **alongst** (= *alonges*).

> " *Alongst* the lee shore."
> > WEBSTER, *Northward Ho.*

" To lie *along,*" = *to lie at full length.*

There is another **along** (O.E. *ge-lang*), in the phrase " *along* of," " *long* of," = *on account of.*

> " *On* hire is al mi lif *ilong.*"
> > O.E. *Misc.* p. 158.
> " But if it is *along on* me."
> > GOWER, *Spec. E. Eng.* xx. 55.
> " And that is *long of* contrarie causes."
> > HOLLAND, *Pliny,* p. 25.
> " All *long of* this vile traitor Somerset."
> > *1 Hen. VI.* iv. 3.
> " And this is *long of* her."
> > FORD.

A-mid, a-midst (O.E. *on-midd-um;* M.E. *a-middes, a-midde, in-middes*), contains the preposition **a** (on) and the adjective mid in *middle, mid-most,* &c.

Other prepositions of this kind are, *a-round, a-slant,* &c. ; *an-ent*, respecting = O.E. *on-efn, on-emn*, near, toward = E.E. *on-efen-t* = M.E. *anentes, anence ; a-thwart* = across ; (O.E. *on thweorh.* Cp. *thweorh* = perverse ; Icel. *thvert*, the acc. neut. of *thverr*, across, transverse) ; *be-low, be-twix-t* (O.E. *be-tweox*) *from two ; be-tween* (O.E. *be-tweon-um*) from *twain.*

Since (O.E. *sith-than;* E.E. *sith-then, sith-the* M.E.
sithenes, sith, sin, sins), from *sith = late;* O.E. *si-
thor later;* cp. *since when.*

O.E. *sith-than = later than, after that.*

(5) Verbal Prepositions.

These are new forms that have arisen out of the
participial (dative) construction : *owing to, notwith-
standing, out-taken,* (replaced by *except*).

We have numerous participial forms of Romanic
origin, as, *according to, concerning, during, except, re-
specting, saving, touching.*

Save = M.E. *sauf, except.* See Chaucer, *Knightes
Tale,* l. 2182.

Sans (Fr.) = *sine* (Lat.) has gone out of use.   It
was occasionally employed by Shakespeare.

CHAPTER XIII.

Conjunctions.

232. Prepositions join *words*, one of which is *subordinate* to the other. Conjunctions join *sentences*, and *co-ordinate* terms. Conjunctions are of comparatively late growth, and have sprung from other parts of speech, especially from pronouns, adverbs, and prepositions.

(1) **Pronominal.—Yet** (O.E. *gy-t*), if (O.E. *gi-f*, M.E. *yi-f, ef, if*), **yea** (O.E. *gea*), **an-d.**

With *and* is connected the archaic conjunction **an** = *if.*

And is very often written for *an* by older writers.

> " *And* you love me, let's do't ; I am dog at a catch."
> > *Twelfth Night*, ii. 3.

> " I pray thee, Launce, *and if* thou seest my boy,
> Bid him make haste."
> > *Two Gentlemen of Verona*, iii. 1.

We occasionally find *but and if* = *but if*; M.E. *but-if* = *unless.*

We have lost the O.E. ge—ge, *both—and ;* ac, *but ;* ne—ne, *neither—nor ;* swa—swa, *as well—as ;* oththe—oththe, *either—or ;* sam—sam ; the—the, *whether—or ;* the or thy, and for-thy ; for-tham(than)-the, be-tham-the = *for that at. by that that, because ;* nu—nu = *now—now.*

For-why is *scarce* now. It occurs in the Psalms (Prayer Book).

Either—or; neither—nor; or—or, nor—nor, have the same origin as the indefinite pronouns, **either** and **neither**. See § 168, p. 127.

Or is a corruption of *either* (O.E. *áwther, áther*) and nor of *neither* (O.E. *náther*). In M.E. we find *other—other* = *either —or ; nother—nother* = *neither—nor*.

> " Put not thy fyngerys in thy dysche,
>   *Nothyr* in flesche *nothir* in fysche."
>   *Babees Book*, p. 18.

> " As trewe as steel *either* stoon."
>   *Ib.* p. 40.

See Luke vi. 42.

El-se, the genitive of **el** (= *other*), is often supplied by *otherwise*.

So gives rise to *also, as,* and *whereas;* **the** is the root of *though,* (O.E. theâ-h) *although, then, than, that,* &c.

The stem of **who** occurs in *what—and* (M.E. *what—what* = *both* ... *and*), *whether, whence,* &c.

(2) **Adverbial** (from nouns).—*Likewise,* (= *in likewise*), *sometimes, at times, whilst, otherwhiles, besides, be-cause, on the contrary, in order that,* &c.

To the end that (Ex. viii. 22) = O.E. *tó tham thæt* = *to that that*.

In O.E. *hwíl-um—hwíl-um ; hwíle—hwíle* = *sometimes— sometimes*.

> " *One while* (the moon) bended pointwise into tips of horns ;
>   *another whiles* divided just in the half, and *anon* again
>   in a compasse round, spotted *sometime* and darke, and
>   *soon after* on a sudden exceeding bright ; *one while* big
>   and full, and *another while,* all at once, nothing to be
>   seene."—HOLLAND, *Pliny,* p. 6.

(3) **Adverbial** (from **adjectives**).—*Both—and,
even, only, now—anon, furthermore, for as much as,
evermore, lastly, firstly, finally,* &c.   *Lest* = O.E. *thŷ
læs the, læs the;* M.E. *leste; natheles* = O.E. *nâ thŷ
læs = nevertheless; unless* = E.E. *onlesse.*

Not only—but also = O.E. *nalæs that ân that—ac elc swâ; as
soon as = sôna swâ—swâ.* In M.E. we find *na the mo = never
the more.*

(4) **Prepositional,** many of which have come
in along with the demonstrative that.—*Ere, after,
before, but, for, since, in that, with that, till* (= *to*),
until (= *unto*).

In O.E. *ôth thæt = until;* E.E. *a thet;* M.E. *for-to, for-te,
fort* (that), *to that = until.* Sometimes *the while til,* and *while*
itself, do duty for *until.*
For to has sometimes the sense of *in order to* (see Gen. xxxi.
18 ; Ex. xvi. 27).

(5) **Verbal.**—*Say, suppose, to talk of, considering,
provided, were it not, how be it,* &c.

CHAPTER XIV.

Interjections.

233. Interjections have no *grammatical* relation to other words in a sentence and are not strictly speaking 'parts of speech.' They are either mere exclamations or cries, as, O ! ah ! eigh ! fy ! or else elliptical expressions, as **good bye** = *god b' wi' ye* = *God be with you.*

Zounds = *God's wounds;* **marry** = the *Virgin Mary;* **grammercy** = *great thanks.*

Alas, alack, Fr. *hêlas,* from *las* (sad), Lat. *lassus.*

234. Some words (adverbs, verbs), are used as interjections : *how, well, out, hence, begone, look, behold.* Cp. *hail ! all hail* = O.E. *wes thu hâl* = *hale be thou ;* O.E. *wes hâl* has become *wassail.* See *The Blickling Homilies,* ed. Morris, pp. 3, 5.

A few primitive interjections have come down to us from the oldest English ; ha, eh (O. E. *ea*), lo, la, (O.E. *lâ*), heigh (*hig*), wo ! (O.E. *wâ*), well-a-way, well-a-day (O.E. *wâ-lâ-wâ* = *woe-lo-woe,* what (O.E. *hwæt*).

CHAPTER XV.

Derivation and Word formation.

235. The primary elements and significant parts of words are called **roots**, as tal in *talk* and *tell;* bar, in *bear, bairn, birth,* &c.

The root is modified (1) by endings called **suffixes** which form **derivatives**, as, *rich*-ly, *nest*-ling ; (2) by particles, placed before the root, called **prefixes,** which form **compounds**, as, for-*bid*, un-*true.*

Two words may be placed together to form compound words, as, **blackbird.**

SUFFIXES OF TEUTONIC ORIGIN.

FROM DEMONSTRATIVE ROOTS.

236. I. Noun Suffixes.

Some suffixes have sprung from old demonstrative or pronominal roots; others are merely altered forms of nouns and adjectives. The origin of the former is very obscure ; that of the latter tolerably certain. Cp. *beauti*-ful, *love*-ly, *glad*-some, &c. See Suffixes of Predicative origin, § 238, p. 209. Many words have an old vowel suffix, as, -ale = O.E. *eal-u ;* -hue = O.E. *heo-w.*

It must be borne in mind—

(1) That many prefixes and suffixes have no longer a living power, that is, are not now used to form new derivatives; as the prefix *for* in *for*-swear, and the suffix -*m* in *gleam*, &c.

(2) That many derivatives were formed from certain ancient roots or stems in the oldest period of our language; as *flight* from *fleðgan*, not from the modern *fly*.

-**d** gives a kind of *passive* signification to words formed from verbal roots: dee-**d** from *do = that which is done.* Cp. floo-**d** from *flow*; glee-**d** (a live coal) from *glow;* see-**d** from *sow*.

-**er** (O.E. -*ere*), denoting the agent or doer: bak-**er**, speak-**er**, mill-**er**.

Sometimes we find -**ar**, -**or** for -**er**; begg-**ar**, schol-**ar**, sail-**or**. Under N.Fr. influence i or y has crept in before -**er**; as, law-*y*-er, glaz-*i*-er, cloth-*i*-er.
-**man** is added to -**er** in fish-*er*-*man*.
-**t** has crept into bragg-*ar*-*t*, and -**d** into dast-*ar*-*d*, loll-*ar*-*d* (M.E. *lollere*).

-**est**; earn-**est**, harv-**est**.

-**ing**, the ending of verbal nouns, O.E. -*ung;* as, learn-**ing**, writ-**ing**, &c.

-**ing** (O.E. -*ing*) forming diminutives: as, farth-**ing** (from *fourth*), tith-**ing** (from *tithe = tenth*), rid-**ing** (from *thrid = third*).

This suffix occurs in a few nouns without adding a diminutival force to them:—kin-g (O.E. *cyn-ing*) :—shill-ing, penn-y(O.E. *pen-ing*); whit-ing, sweet-ing. This suffix had originally a possessive force, hence it formed *patronymics;* as, O.E. *Scilf-ing,* the son of *Scilf; Æthelwulf-ing,* the son of *Æthelwulf.*

-**l-ing**, made up of -**l** and -**ing**, forms diminutives: dar-**ling** (from *dear*), gos-**ling**, strip-**ling**, under-**ling**.

The addition of the suffix *-ling* has caused *dear, goose,* and *stripe,* to shorten their original long vowels.   Cp. *nation* and *national,* "to *break* a *fast,"* and "to *breakfast."*

-**k** : haw-k, mil-k, yol-k.

-**kin** (= *-k* + *-in*) forms diminutives : as, lamb-kin, lad-kin, fir-kin (from *four*).

It forms patronymics in Daw-kin (from *David*), Per-kins (from *Peter*).

-**le,** denoting agent or instrument : as, bead-le, (from O.E. *beodan, to pray*); bund-le (from *bind*); steep-le (from *steep*); sett-le (from *seat*); thimb-le (from *thumb*).

We find this 1 in angle, apple, bramble, fiddle, saddle, shambles, fowl, hail, heel, nail, sail, stile, (from *sty, to go up*).

-**l, -le** (O.E. *-els,* Ger. *-el*) : as, buri-al, brid-le, gird-le, ridd-le (from O.E. *ræd-en, to read, interpret, advise*), skitt-les (from O.E. *sceôt-an, to shoot*), shew-el (a scarecrow).

-**m** (O.E. *-ma, -m.* Cp. Lat. no-*men*) : bar-m (from *bear*), bloo-m (from *blow*), doo-m (from *do*) : glea-m (from *glow*), qual-m (from *quell*), sea-m (from *sew*), strea-m (from *strew, to scatter, spread*), tea-m (from *tow, tug*), stea-m (from *stew*).

It takes the form of -om in bloss-om, bos-om, fath-om.

-**n** (of the same origin as the -**n** in passive participles) : bair-n (from *bear*), beac-on (from *beck*), burd-en (from *bear*), heav-en (from *heave*), maid-en, mai-n (from *mag, to be great*), wagg-on, wai-n (from *wag*).

In chick-en (from cock), the suffix has a diminutival force; kitt-en (from *cat*) = M.E. *kit-oun.* We also find *kit-l-ing* = *kitten.*

-en in vix-en (from *fox*) was once a common sign of the feminine.

-nd (an old present participial ending): err-and, fi-end (from O.E. *fi-an, to hate*), freo-nd (from *freo-n, to love*), wi-nd (from *wa, to blow*).

-ness (O.E. *-nis, -nes*), forming abstract nouns from nouns and adjectives; as, wit-ness, wilder-ness; dark-ness, good-ness, &c.

-ock (O.E. *-uca*), forming diminutives and patronymics: as, bull-ock, hill-ock; pill-ock (a little *pill*), Poll-ock (from *Paul*), Wil-cox, Wil-c-ock (from *Will*).

In the Scotch dialects we find ladd-ock, wif-ock. This -ock becomes -ick, or -ie (-y); as, lass-*ick*, lass-*ie*. Cp. mamm-*y*, dadd-*y*.

-r (instrumental): fing-er (from *fang, to take*) lai-r (from *lie*), stai-r (from *sty, to climb*), timb-er (from *timb, to build*), wat-er (from *wet*), wint-er (from *wind*).

-ster (O.E. *estre*), originally a sign of the feminine gender: as, spin-ster.

It merely marks the agent in song-ster, huck-ster, malt-ster, young-ster.

Upholsterer or *upholster*, is a corruption of *upholder*.

-s: blis-s (from *blithe*), eave-s. It also appears in *adze, axe*.

-th, -t (of the same origin as the **d** in *seed*, &c.). It is used, for the most part, to form abstract nouns from verbs and adjectives: as, dear-th (from *dear*), wid-th (from *wide*), heal-th (from *hale*), leng-th (from *long*), slo-th (from *slow*), dea-th (from *die*), bir-th (from *bear*), ear-th (from *ear, to plough*).

Drough-t (from *dry*, O.E. *drîg*) : **heigh-t** (from *high*), **len-ten** (from *long*).

Drif-t (from *drive*) : **fligh-t** (from *fly*, O.E. *flêogan*), **gif-t**, (from *give*), **migh-t** (from *may*, O.E. *mæg*), **slaugh-t-er** (from *slay*, O.E. *sleáhan*), **sigh-t** (from *see*, O.E. *seon*, pret. *seah*), **draugh-t** from *draw* or *drag*, O.E. *dragan*), **fros-t**, **beques-t**.

The suffix t for th is due to the sharp sounds f, gh (originally h), s. In O.E. th was always sounded flat, as in *thine*.

-ther, -ter, marking the agent : **bro-ther**, **fa-ther**, **mo-ther**, **daugh-ter**, **sis-ter**, **fos-ter** (from *food*).

-ther, -ter, -der, marking the instrument : **bla-dder**, (from *blow*), **fea-ther** (from root *fat, to fly*), **wea-ther** (from *wa, to blow*), **fo-dder** (from *fa, to feed*), **la-dder** (from root *hlî, to climb*), **mur-der** (from *mar, to kill*). **Ru-dder** (from *row*), **laugh-ter**.

-y (O.E. *-ig, -h*) : **bod-y**, **hon-ey**. It has become **-ow** in **holl-ow**, **sall-ow**, **marr-ow**, &c.

-ow also arises out of (1) O.E. *-u* :—*mall-ow, mead-ow, shad-ow.* (2) O.E. *ewe* :—*swallow.*

237. II. Adjective Suffixes.

-d (like the *d* in *dee-d*, &c.) : **bol-d**, **col-d**, **lou-d**, **love-d**, **feathere-d**, **foote-d**, &c.   See p. 205.

-ish (O.E. *-isc*) forms patronymics, as, **Eng-lish**, **Wel-sh**, **Ir-ish**. It signifies *some-what, rather*, in **green-ish**, **whit-ish**, &c. ; it marks contempt and depreciation, in **book-ish**, **outland-ish**, **hogg-ish**.

-le, -l (O.E. *-el, -ol*) : **britt-le** (from O.E. *bryttan*, to break), **id-le**, **litt-le** (O.E. *lyt*, few), **fick-le**, **gripp-le** (*rasping, greedy), **new-fang-le-d** (= taken up with

new things, (from O.E. *fangan*, to take), tick-le (un-steady), forget-ful = M.E. for-get-el (O.E. for-git-*ol*).

-en, *made of.* It originally signified *of* or *be-longing to*: as, flax-en, gold-en, wood-en, &c.

There was once a very large number of adjectives in -en; as, ashen, oaken, glassen, &c. The extensive use that could be once made of this suffix may be seen from the following passage :—

> " God him selue thaim led thair way,
>   To wise and kepe bath night and day,
>   With *clouden* piler on day liht,
>   With *firen* piler apon the night."—*Cursor Mundi*, G. ll.
> *Clouden* piler = pillar of cloud.   [6195-6.
> *Firen* piler = pillar of fire.

-en (participial) : bound-en, molt-en, &c.

-r, -er (O.E. *-or, -er, -r*) : bitt-er from *bite*, slipper-y ; cp. M.E. slid-er (slippery), lith-er (bad), wak-er (watchful), flicker = flik-er (= fickle, flickering).

-er and -n are combined in east-er-n, north-er-n, south-er-n, west-er-n.

-t : brigh-t, lef-t, ligh-t, righ-t, swif-t. See -t, p. 207.

·th : fif-th, six-th, seven-th.

-y (O.E. *-ig*) : an-y, blood-y, clay-ey, craft-y, dirt-y, &c., sill-y (O.E. *sæl-ig*).

-ow arises out of an older -u :—call-ow, fall-ow, narr-ow, yell-ow.

238. II. Suffixes from Predicative Roots.

(1) Nouns.

-craft (O.E. *cræft*) : priest-craft, witch-craft, wood-craft.

-kind (O.E. *-cyn*) = *kin* : man-kin-d, woman-kin-d.

In E. E. and M. E. we find fowl-*kin*, worm-*kin*, &c. In M. E. kin, instead of being used after the noun, was put between the *numeral* and *noun*; hence it is mostly found in the genitive case.

> " *Monies cunnes ufel.*"
> = Evil of *many a kind.*
> " For *nones kunnes* mede."
> = For meed of *no kind.*
> " *Alles kinnes* bokes."
> = Books of *every kind.*

In M. E. we find *alskyns, noskyns, no skynnes, nakin, what-kin.* These (Northern) forms are perhaps due to Scandinavian influence. Cp. Dan. *alskins,* " of every sort."

The phrase *no kin* became also *no kind of,* and *no manner, no manner of,* &c. · Cp. the following from the *Cursor Mundi :—*

> " Of *nankines* worm þat euer is made."—G. l. 1961.
> " O *nakin* worm þat es made."—G. l. 1961.
> " Of *no maner* worm þat is made."—T. l. 1961.

-dom = *doom* (O.E. *dôm,* Ger. *thum*) : thral-dom, wis-dom, cristen-dom, hali-dom (and halidame = O.E. *hâlig-dom;* E.E. *halidom,* sanctuary, relic) ; king-dom (from O.E. *cyne,* royal).

In E.E. *kine* is a very common prefix, *kine-ȝerde* = royal-rod, sceptre, *kine-helm* = crown, *kine-riche* = realm, *kine-setle* = royal settle, throne.

-fare (O.E. *faru,* way ; *faran,* to go), way, course · thorough-fare, wel-fare, chaf-fer (= chap-*fare* from *cheap*).

-head, -hood (O.E. *hâd,* state, rank, person ; M.E. -*hed,* -*hod;* Ger. -*heit*).

God-**head**, man-hood (M.E. man-*hede,* man-*hode*) ; live-li-**hood** once signified liveliness ; but it now represents the O.E. *lîf-lade;* E.E. *lif-lode;* M.E. *live-lode* (life-leading), sustenance.

-herd (O.E. *hyrde,* pastor, keeper, herdsman) :

shep-**herd**, swine-**herd**. Cp. goose-**herd** (Holins-hed), hog-**herd** (Harrison).

-**lock**, -**ledge** (O.E. *lác*, gift, sport), wed-**lock**, know-**ledge** (M. E. know-*leche*, know-*lache*, know-*lage*).

O.E. bryd-*lac* = marriage, reaf-*lac*, bereaving, spoil. The Icelandic -*leikr* (= O.E. -*lac*) is very common under the forms -*leic* or -*laik* in E.E., and M.E.; god-*leic* = goodness, hende-*leik*, hende-*laik* = politeness, from *hende* (= O.E. *gehende*, at *hand*, *ready*, *polite*).

-**man** often does duty for the O.E. -**ere**. Cp. ship-**man**, chap-**man**, dust-**man**, bell-**man**, work-**man** (O.E. wyrht-a).

M.E. *fishere* = fish-er-man. Cp. speak*er* and spoke-s-man (= M.E. speke-*man*). The **s** is an intruder in *craft-s-man*, *hunt-s-man*, *herd-s-man*. Wife sometimes takes the place of -*ster*. Cp. *brew-wif* (in *Piers Plowman*) for *brewestere*; *fish-wife* = fish-woman; *mid-wife*; *hussy* = house-wife; *goody* = good-wife.

-**lock**, -**lick** (O.E. -*leac*, -*lic*, plant): gar-**lick** (spear plant): hem-**lock**, bar-**ley** (O.E. *ber-lic*, from *bere* barley).

-**red** (O.E. *rêden* = mode, fashion, condition; Ger. -*rath*): hat-**red**, kin-d-**red**.

-**rick** (O.E. *ríce*, power, dominion): bishop-**rick**. Cp. M.E. hevene-*riche*, king-*riche* (= E.E. kine-*riche*), realm.

-**ship**, -**skip**, -**scape** (O.E. *scipe*, Icel. -*skapr* = form, *shape*): friend-**ship**, lord-**ship**, wor-**ship** (= *worth-ship*); land-**scape** (land-skip) is a modern formation.

Fairfax, in his *Bulk and Selvage of the World*, coins *steamscope* for *atmosphere*.

-**stead** (O.E. *stede,* place, *stead;* from *stand*), bed-**stead**; sun-**stead** = sol-stice.

-**tree** (O.E. *treow,* tree, wood), axle-**tree**; M.E. dore-*tre* (door-post), rode-*tre* (rood-tree, cross).

-**wright** (O.E. *wyrhta,* E.E. *wrihte,* a workman : from *work* cp. *wrought*), ship-**wright**, wheel-**wright**.

In E.E. we find *psalm-wurhte, psalm-wrihte* = psalm-*wright,* or the O.E. *psalm-scop* = psalm-shaper, psalmist. Becon uses *psalm-o-graph* for psalmist !

E.E. *bred-wrigte* = bread-wright = baker.

-**ward** (O.E. *weard,* warder, keeper), ape-**ward**, bear-**ward**, hay-**ward**.

(2) ADJECTIVES.

-**fast** (O.E. *-fæst,* firm, *fast*) : sted-**fast**, shame-**faced** (= shame-*fast,* modest) : root-**fast**.

-**fold** (O.E. *-feald*) : two-**fold**, mani-**fold**.

-**ful** (O.E. *-ful*) : aw-**ful**, bale-**ful**, hate-**ful**, need-**ful**.

-**less** (O.E. *-leás* = loose) : fear-**less**, god-**less**.

-**ly**, -**like** (O.E. *-líc; líc,* Ger. *leich,* body) : god-**ly**, like-**ly**, man-**ly**, dove-**like**, war-**like**. See § 225, p. 190.

"'Tis as *manlike* to bear extremities as *godlike* to forgive." — FORD.

-**right** (O.E. *-riht*) : up-**right**, down-**right**.

In M.E. *upright* = supine ; *downright* = perpendicular.

-**some** (O.E. *-sum,* Ger. *-sam*) is another form of same : dark-**some**, hard-**some**, irk-**some** : buxom

= *bugh-som* = bending-some, pliant, obedient, from
bow (O.E. *bugan* to bend): lissom = *lithe-some.*

-teen, ty = ten. See numerals § 118, p. 98.

-ward (O.E. *-weard*, becoming, leading to. Cp.
O.E. *weorth-an*, to become, Lat. *versus*, from *vertere*,
to turn): back-ward, for-ward, fro-ward, to-ward,
unto-ward.

-wise (O.E. *wis*, way, mode): right-eous (O.E.
riht-wis = right-wise. Cp. M.E. *tale-wise* = tell-
tale, tale-bearing.

> " For Godd es ever on *right-wis* side,
> Werrand [warring] again *wrang-wis* pride."
> > *C. Mundi*, G. ll. 7547, 7548.

-worth (O.E. *-weorth*, E.E. *-wurthe*): stal-worth,
dear-worth (precious).

In E.E. we find *luue-wurthe* (love-worthy), *kine-wurthe* (royal).

239. IV. Adverbial Suffixes.

The demonstrative suffixes -s, -m, -nce, have
already been treated of under **adverbs**, §§ 224, 226,
pp. 187, 188, 191.

The following are of predicative origin :—

-ly (O.E. *-lice*): bad-ly, on-ly, lone-ly (= *al-one-
ly*), utter-ly, willing-ly. See -ly, p. 212.

-ling, -long (O.E. *-lunga, -linga*): head-long, flat-
ling, dark-ling, side-ling, side-long.

In M.E. we find the genitive form -lynges (linges) in *grof-
lynges* = groveling (prone), *hedlinges* = headlong.

> " I'll run headlongs by and by."
> > **WEBSTER**, *Northward Ho.*
> " Hurlet (hurl'd) hym doun *hedlynges.*"
> > *The Gest Hystoriale*, l. 7485.

Nose-linges, naselynge, noslyngys (supine, with the nose up-
ward), *handlinges* (hard to hand).

-meal (O.E. *-mælum*, from *mæl*, division, *meal*):
limb-meal, piece-meal, flock-meal.

-ward, -wards: hither-ward, down-wards, up-
wards. See p. 213.

-wise (see p. 213): other-wise, no-wise, like-
wise.

In M.E. we find "in other wise," "in no wise," "in like
wise," "in the same wise," "in what wise."

-way, -ways: al-way, al-ways, straight-way,
straight-ways.

-Gate or gates = *gait*, way, is a suffix in M.E.
Thus *-gate*, other *-gates*, so-*gate*.

240. V. Verbal Suffixes.

-k (frequentative or intensitive): har-k (from *hear*),
tal-k (from *tell*), stal-k (from *steal*).

-l, -le (frequentative): dibb-le (from *dip*), dribb-le
(from *drip*), dazz-le (from *daze*), grapp-le (from *grasp*),
dwind-le (from *dwine*), knee-l, spark-le, start-le.

-n (causative): hast-en, strength-en, fatt-en, short-
en, &c.

This suffix had once a reflexive or passive signification. Cp.
learn from M.E. *leren*.

-r (frequentative or intensitive): ling-er, (O.E.
leng-an, to delay), flitt-er, glitt-er, glimm-er, welt-er.

Stagger = M.E. *stakeren*. For change of consonant before
the suffix, cp. dribb-le from *drip*, &c.

-s: ble-ss (O.E. *blēt-s-i-an*, from *blot*, sacrifice),
clean-se, tru-s-t, cla-s-p (from *clap*), gra-s-p, (from
grap), li-s-p (from *lip*).

Rinse = Fr. *rincer* (= *rins-er*, from a root found in Goth.
hrain-jan, to cleanse ; *hrains*, pure, clean. Ger. *rein*, pure.)

241. COMPOSITION.

Two or more words joined together to make a single term, expressing a new notion, are called **Compounds**: as, *black-bird, rail-road, rain-bow*, &c.

The accent distinguishes a compound word from the mere collocation of two terms, as *blackbird* and *black bird.* The hyphen is used to denote a compound, as, *passer-by, man-of-war, coast-line*, &c.

Notice the shortening of the long vowel in compounds, as, *breakfast, shepherd; vineyard* (= M.E. *wyn-yard*).

Compound words form **nouns, adjectives, verbs**, and **adverbs**.

I. Noun-Compounds.

1. Noun and noun :—

Noontide, churchyard, oaktree, doomsday, kinsman, herdsman, man-killer, &c.

There are many similar old compounds whose elements are so fused together that we do not recognize them at first sight.

Bridal = bride-ale
Bandog = band-dog, Holinshed has *band-dog* or *tie-dog*.
Gospel = *god-spell* = good-word.
Nostril = *nose-thrill* = nose-hole (O.E. *thyrel* = hole).
Orchard = *wort-* (herb) *yard* (garden); O.E. *ort-geard*.
Nightingale = night-singer (O.E. *nihtĕ-gale*).
Hand-y-work = O.E. *hand-geweorc*, hand work.[1]
Cp. everywhere = E.E. *ever-ihwer* = O.E. *æfre + gehwær*.

2. Substantive and adjective :—

Alderman, freeman, blackbird, midnight, upperhand,

---

[1] For a longer list, see "Historical Outlines," p. **222**.

(M.E. *over-hand*), *fore-thought; neighbour* = O.E. *neåh-bur* = nigh dweller ; *twilight, fortnight,* &c.

3. Substantive and pronoun :—

Self-will, self-esteem, self-sacrifice.

(4) Substantive and verb :—

Bakehouse, pickpocket, telltale, spendthrift, godsend windfall.

II. Adjective-Compounds.

1. Substantive and Adjective :—

Blood-red, snow-white, sea-sick, heart-sick, fire-proof, praise-worthy.

2. Adjective and substantive :—

Bare-foot, bare-foot-ed. Cp. O.E. *clæn-heort* = *having a clean heart; ån-eage* = *one-eye-d, four-footed,* &c.

3. Adjective and adjective :—

Fool-hardy (fool = foolish). Cp. *mad-hardy, blue-green, rathe-ripe.*

4. Participial combinations :—

(*a*) Noun and pres. part. : *earth-shaking, heart-rending, match-making.*

(*b*) Adjective and pres. part. : *ill-looking, time-serving.*

(*c*) Noun and pass. part. : *earth-born, chap-fallen, heart-broken, thunder-struck.*

(*d*) Adjective and pass. part. : *new-made, well-bred, dead-drunk,* &c.

III. Verb-Compounds.

1. Noun and verb: *backbite, hoodwink, henpeck, waylay.*

2. Adjective and verb: *dry-nurse, white-wash.*

3. Verb and adverb: *doff* = do off, *don* = do on. Cp. *cross-question.*

For compound adverbs, see § 228, p. 193, 194.

242. COMPOSITION WITH PARTICLES OF ENGLISH ORIGIN.

I. Inseparable Particles.

a- (O.E. *on,* E.E. *an*) on: a-back, a-bed, a-board, a-foot, a-sleep, a-loof, a-skew, a-loud, a-b-aft, a-b-out, a-midst, a-mong, a-thwart, a-fishing, a-hunting, &c.

1. The original form an occurs in an-on (*in one* moment), an-ent (see p. 188), a-c-knowledge (O.E. *oncnáwan*), an-vil (O.E. an-filt).

2. A- (O.E. *of,* off, from): a-down = O.E. *of dáne,* from the down (hill); a-kin, a-new.

The prefix of- had an intensitive meaning, like our *over* and Latin *per.* Cp. M.E. *of-take* = overtake; M.E. *of-se* = perceive.

Of (intensive), exists in a-thirst = O.E. *of-thirst;* an-hungered = a-hungered, from O.E. *of -hyngrian,* to feel very hungry. (See *Piers Plowman,* B. x. 59, p. 146, and C. XII. 43, p. 198).

3. A- (O.E. *á-,* Goth. *us-* = out of, from), a-rise, a-rouse, a-f-frighted, a-wake, a-light; a-go = passed by.

          " All this world schal *a-go.*"
                              O.E. Misc. p. 160.

We have a prefix a- in a-ghast, a-shamed, a-feard, a-ffrighted, but it is difficult to say whether its original meaning was *out of* (O.E. a- = Goth. us-), or *from* (O.E. *of*).

4. A- (O.E. *and-* Ger. *ent-*, back). A-long (O.E. *and-lang*, M.E. *ende-long*, E.E. *an-long*, M.E. *on-long*). An-swer (O.E *and-swarian*), en-lighten (O.E. *onlyhtan*).

A-bide (O.E. *an-bîdan, on-bîdan, and-bidan*).

A-gain, a-gainst (O.E. *on-gean*, Ger. *ent-gegen*).

Cp. e-lope (Du. *ont-loopen*, Ger. *ent-laufen*).

5. A- (O.E. *ge-*), a-ware (O.E. *ge-wær*, M.E. *i-war*), a-like (O.E. *ge-lîc*, ME. *i-lich, e-liche, a-liche, o-like*).

A-long (*of*), (O.E. *ge-lang*, E.E. *i-lang*, M.E. *a-lang*).

A-mong (O.E. *ge-mang, on-ge-mang*, E.E. *i-mong*, M.E. *o-mang, a-mong*).

A-nough occurs in Milton's *Areopagitica*, for e-nough (O.E. *ge-noh*, M.E. *enogh, anough*). A-readiness (in the Authorised Version of the Scriptures), is from M.E. *a-redi*, E.E. *i-readi, i-redi*, O.E *ge-râd*.

A-f-ford (O.E. ge-forthian, E.E. *i-forthien*, M.E. *a-forthien*, from *forth*).

6. A- (O.E. *â* ever) : a-ught, e-i-ther.

at- (O.E. *æt-*) : at-one, at-onement, t-wit (O.E. *æt-wîtan*, to reproach).

The preposition **at** is used as a sign of the infinitive in M.E. *At do* has become corrupted into a-do ; we find also *to-do* (= *a-do*) used as a substantive.

> " Ware we neuer wont *a* stele."
> > *Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 4910.
> " For ware we neuer wont *at* stele."—*Ib.* C.

be- (O.E. *be-, bi-* = by). See **Adverbs**, p. 188.

(1) It renders intransitive verbs transitive, as be-queath, be-speak, be-think.

(2) It is intensive in be-daub, be-smear, &c. We find this use of the prefix very common in M.E., as be-bleed, be-drive, be-bark, &c.

(3) With substantives it forms verbs, be-friend, be-troth, and a few others of recent origin.

(4) It enters into the composition of *nouns*, as be-half, be-hest, be-hoof, be-quest, by-name, by-path, by-word, &c. ; and of *prepositions* and *adverbs*, as be-fore, be-sides, b-ut, &c.   Bye-law probably contains the Scandinavian " by," *a town.*

> Be-head = O.E. *heafdian*, E.E. *bi-heavedien, to decapitate.*
> Be-lieve = O.E. *ge-lyfan*, M.E. *beleuen.*
> Be-reave = O.E. *reafian*, E.E. *bireavien.*
> Be-gin = O.E. *on-ginnan*, E.E. *bi-ginnen.*
> Be-wray is a corruption of the O.E. *on-wreon, to discover;*
> O.E. *be-wreon,* signified *to cover;* the be is perhaps due to the
> M.E. *bi-traien, to betray.*
> In be-ware we have the verb be (imper.) and the adjective
> ware (= cautious).

for- (O.E. *for-*).   The original meaning of this prefix was *through, thorough,* like Lat. *per:* for-swear (Lat. *per-jurare*), for-bid, for-bear, for-get, for-give, for-lorn, fore-go (= for-go).   The p. p. fore-gone is rare.

> For-*do* occurs also in the place of the modern *do for.* Cp.
> Lat. *per-dere.* Spenser has for-pined, for-wasted, for-wearied.
> We sometimes find *for* joined to Romance roots, as, for-fend
> = *defend, forbid;* for-barred, *barred up, debarred.*
> From the sense of *overmuch* comes that of *amiss, badly,* in
> *fore-speak, fore-spent.*

fore- (O.E. *fore,* Lat. *præ,* before) : fore-bode, fore-cast, fore-tell, fore-said, fore-father, fore-noon, fore-sight, fore-head.

> fore-gone, the p. p. of fore-go (rarely used), *to go before,*
> must be distinguished from fore-go (= for-go), and fore-gone
> (= for-gone).

gain- (O.E. *gegn, gean*) = against. Cp. *a-gain.* Gain-say, gain-stand, gain-strive, gain-giving.

Cp. M.E. *gein*-come = return; *gain*-sawe = contradiction; *again* was once used as a prefix. Cp. M.E. *ayen-bite* = remorse, *ayen-byggen* = redeem, *ayen-wiȝte* = counterpoise.

i-, y- (O.E. *ge-*, M.E. *i-*). This prefix was once a sign of the pass. part., as, y-clept, y-chained (Milton). It is wrongly used in y-pointing (Milton, *On Shake-speare*). It enters into the composition of i-wis (O.E. *ge-wis*, truly, certainly), ever-y-where, hand-y-work.

mis- (O.E. *mis-*), wrong, ill. Cp. a-mis (= on the wrong, M.E. *misse* wrong, injury): **mis-**behave, **mis-**deed, mis-lead, mis-trust, mis-take; mis-like, (in Shakespeare) has become dis-like.

For mis- in *mischief,* see p. 243.

nether-, (O.E. *ni-ther*) = down, below : nether-stocks, nether-lands.

sand- (O.E. *sâm,* half): **sand**-blind = half-blind.

"Wrinkled, *sand-blind,* toothless, and deformed."—BURTON, *Anatomy of Melancholy,* ed. 1845, p. 70.
Cp. O.E. *sâm-cwic* = half-alive; M.E. *sam-hale* = half-whole, lame (*Cursor Mundi,* l. 5153); "chiries *sam-rede*" = half-ripe (*Piers Plowman,* C. Text, ix. 311, p. 155).

to- (O.E. *to-*). This is an adverbial form of *two* (cp. Lat. *dis-*) signifying *asunder, in pieces:* O.E. *to-brecan* = to break to pieces, *to-dælan* = to divide ; E.E. *to-don,* to do asunder; *to-fleon,* to fly asunder ; M.E. *to-pullen,* to pull to pieces, &c.

It sometimes has an intensitive force, and is strengthened by the adverb all (quite).

"And all *to-* brake his skull."
Judges IX. 5, 3.
"Al is *to- broken* thilke regioun."
CHAUCER, *Knightes Tale,* l. 2759.

Go to (used as an interjection in *Hamlet* i. 3) seems to correspond to *to-go* = O.E. *to-gân, to go away, depart;* cp. *for-do* and *do-for.*

For the phrase "*all to*," see all, § 243.

to- is the ordinary preposition " to " in to-day, to-night, to-morrow, to-gether, here-to-fore, to-ward.

un- (O.E. *on-*, Goth. *and-*, Ger. *ent-*) = back (with verbs): un-bind, un-do, un-fold, un-lock, un-wind.

un- (O.E. *un-*) = not (with adjectives, and nouns formed from adjectives): un-true, un-wise, un-told, un-just, un-truth.

wan- (O.E. *wan-*) wan-ing, want-ing: wan-hope = despair; wan-ton = *wan-towen*, untrained, wild; *-towen* is the O.E. *togen*, p.p. of the O.E. verb *te-on*, lead, draw. Cp. Ger. *un-ge-zogen.*

with- (O.E. *with-*, a shortened form of *wi-ther*), against, back: with-draw, with-hold, with-stand.

243. II. Separable Particles.

Af-ter (O.E. *after*): after-growth, after-math, after-clap, after-dinner, after-ward.

All (O.E. *eal*): al-mighty, al-one, l-one, l-onely, l-onesome, al-to-gether, al-most, al-though, al-so, a-s.

All, meaning *quite*, is very often joined to the adverb to (too), and was made to precede the prefix *to-* in composition. (See to- p. 220).

> "*All to* dirtied."—LATIMER.
> "*Alt to* ruffled."—MILTON.
> M.E. "*Al to* longe."
> *Life of Beket,* 774.
> E.E. "*Al to* wel."
> *Ju'iana,* p. 50.

Forth (O.E. *forth*): forth-coming, forth-going
for-ward (O.E. forth-weard).

"From that day *forthward* man most nedes deie."—*Trevisa.*
Cp. E.E. *forth-fare* = departure, *forth-gong* = progress, &c.

Fro, from (O.E. *fram*, O.N. *fra*): fro-ward, from-
ward.

In (O.E. *in*): in-come, in-land, in-sight, in-born,
in-bred, in-wardly, in-ly, in-lay, in-fold, in-to.

In many verbs in has been replaced by a Romance form (en-,
em-): en-dear, em-bitter.

Of (O.E. *of* = from, *off*): of-fal, off-set, off-shoot,
off-spring. See a-, pp. 217-8.

In M.E. we find *of-schreden*, shred off; *of-smiten*, smite off;
E.E. *of-springen*, to spring from.

On (O.E. *on*, upon, forward): on-set, on-slaught,
on-ward.

Out, ut (O.E. *ût*): out-come, out-let, out-break,
out-pour, out-cast, out-joint, out-law, out-landish,
out-side, out-ward, ut-ter. It sometimes signifies
beyond, *over*, as in out-bid, out-do.

Over (O.E. *ofer*): above, beyond, exceedingly,
too :—

(1) With nouns and adjectives: over-eating, over-
flow, over-plus (E.E. *over-eke*), over-joy, over-big,
over-much.

(2) With verbs: over-flow, over-hang, over-run,
over-take, over-work, over-whelm, over-hear, over-
look.

Over (O.E. *ufe-ra*, E.E. *uve-re*, superior; cp.
a-b-*ove*): over-coat, over-man; M.E. over-lippe =
upper-lip; ofer-hand = upper-hand.

Through, thorough (O.E. *thurh*, E.E. *thuruh*):

thorough-fare (M.E. *thurgh-fare*), **through**-out, **thorough**-bred, **through**-train.

Cp. E.E. *thurgh*-feren (to go through), *thurh*-driven, *thurh*-seken, *thurh*-wunian (to remain); M.E. *thorow*-bore (bore through), *thorow*-ride, &c.

Under (O.E. *under*): **under**-go, **under**-stand, **under**-lay, **under**-mine, **under**-let, **under**-sell; **under**-growth, **under**-ling, **under**-wood, **under**-hand, **under**-neath.

Up (O.E. *up*): **up**-bear, **up**-braid, **up**-hold, **up**-heave, **up**-lifted, **up**-land, **up**-shot, **up**-right, **up**-start, **up**-ward, **up**-on.

244. SUFFIXES OF ROMANIC ORIGIN.

Under the head of Romanic suffixes we must distinguish (1) those Latin suffixes that have a Norman French form; (2) those suffixes that are unchanged, being borrowed directly from the Latin language; (3) modern French and other Romance endings of Latin origin.

Voy-age comes through N. French; its Latin form is *vi-aticum*. Cp. beni-**son** with benedic-**tion**, charm-**el** and carn-**al**, &c.

Liqu-our has a N. French form; liqu-**eur** comes to us from modern French; cp. *antic* (N.Fr.), *antique* Fr. Cavalc-**ade**, escap-**ade**, are Italian words that have come to us through the French. The true French forms are *chevauch-ée* and *échapp-ée;* other forms in -**ade** (originally -**ado**), come to us directly from the Spanish language, as crus-**ade**, brav-**ado**, torn-**ado**, &c.; cp. prem-**ier** (Fr.), prim-**ary** (Lat.), prim-**er**

(N.Fr.)   Many suffixes of Norman French origin have now no living power, not being used to form new derivatives.

I. Noun Suffixes.

-age (Lat. *-aticum*), forms abstract nouns : advant-*age*, bever-*age*, cour-*age*, hom-*age*.

It sometimes denotes the place where, as in hermit-*age*, parson-*age*.

Till-*age* and cott-*age* are hybrids.

-ain, -an, -en, -on (Lat. *-anus*) : chapl-*ain*, chieft-*ain*, vill-*ain*, pelic-*an*, peas-*ant*, ward-*en* (= guard-*ian*), sext-*on* (= sacrist-*an*), surge-*on*, sover-*eign*.

Modern formations, having no corresponding Latin form in *-anus*, are antiquari-*an*, barbari-*an*, civili-*an*, grammari-*an*, librari-*an*, &c.

From modern French come artis-*an*, courtes-*an*, partis-*an*.

-ain (Lat. *-aneus*), appears in -mount-*ain*, camp-*aign*, champ-*aign*.

-al, -el (Lat. *-alis*) : can-*al*, cardin-*al*, cathedr-*al*, coron-*al*, spitt-*al*, chann-*el*, catt-*le*, chatt-*el*, fu-*el*, jew-*el*, &c.

Lat. *-alia* (pl.) appears in batt-*le*, entr-*ail*, marv-*el*, rasc-*al*, spous-*als*, victu-*als*.

-ant, -ent (Lat. *-antem*, *-entem*) are participial suffixes, sometimes marking the agent :—

Coven-*ant*, gi-*ant*, merch-*ant*, serge-*ant*, brig-*and*, diam-*ond*, innoc-*ent*, stud-*ent*.

-ance, -ence (Lat. *-ant-ia*), form abstract nouns:—

Abund-*ance*, allegi-*ance*, ch-*ance* (= cad-*ence*), pur-vey-*ance* (= provid-*ence*), obeis-*ance* (obedi-*ence*), prud-*ence*, sci-*ence*, &c.

-ancy, -ency, are new formations from the Latin *-antia, -entia,* becoming (1) *-antie, -entie,* (2) *-ancie, -encie,* &c., brilli-*ancy,* excell-*ency,* &c.

sé-*ance* is from modern French.

-and, -end (Lat. *-andus, -endus*), are gerundial suffixes :—

(1) Garl-*and,* vi-*and,* leg-*end,* prov-*end*-er.

(2) Memor-*andum* retains its Latin form ; (3) preb-*end,* reprim-*and,* are directly from Modern French.

-ar, -er, -or (Lat. *-arium*), marks the place where ; it enters into the name of some common objects :—

(1) Cell-*ar,* mort-*ar,* chart-*er,* dow-*er,* sampl-*er,* garn-*er,* lard-*er,* sauc-*er,* man-*or.*

(2) -ary (Lat. *-arium*), gran-*ary,* (= garn-*er*), avi-*ary,* semin-*ary,* viv-*ary.*

In M.E. we find O.Fr. *-aire* in sal-*arie,* seyntu-*arie* (sanctuary), lettu-*arie* = electuary.

(1) **-ar, -er, -or** (Lat. *-arius*), marks the agent : calend-*ar,* vic-*ar,* arch-*er,* butch-*er,* butl-*er,* carpent-*er,* farri-*er,* messeng-*er,* treasur-*er,* bachel-*or,* chan-cell-*or,* coun-sell-*or.*

(2) -ary (Lat. *-arius*) : advers-*ary,* secret-*ary,* &c.

Commiss-*arie* = commissary, *not-arie* = not-*ary,* are met with in M.E. and the suffix is owing to the O.Fr. *-aire,* not *-arie.* See -ry, p. 230.

-ard (Low Lat. *-ardus,* Ger. *-hart,* Eng. *hard*) : cow-*ard,* dull-*ard,* nigg-*ard,* buzz-*ard,* tank-*ard,* &c.

Bragg-ar-t, dastar-d, lollar-d (cp. schol-*ard* for schol-ar), must be excluded from this list.

Sweet-heart has perhaps replaced an original *sweet-ard.* (Cp. Ger. lieb-hart).

Q

-ate (N. Fr. *-at*, Lat. *-atus*, pass. part.) : cur-ate, leg-ate, reneg-ate.

Most nouns in -ate are of recent origin ; -ade is the Spanish form of *-ate.* Cp. reneg-*ade* = reneg-*ate.* *Advocate* has replaced M.E. *avocat*, Fr. *avocat.*

-ee (Fr. *-ée*, Lat. *-atus*, suffix of pass. part.), marks the agent in a passive sense.

Appell-*ee*, legat-*ee*, trust-*ee*, &c., are from Modern French.

-eer, -ier (Fr. *-er*, *-ier;* Lat. *-arius*) : engin-*eer*, mountain-*eer*, harpoon-*er*, brigad-*ier*, prem-*ier*, chandel-*ier*, are from Modern French.   See -ar, -er, p. 225, for the N. French form.

-el (Lat. *-ela*) : cant-*el*, cand-*le*, quarr-*el*, tut-*el*-age.

-el (Lat. *-ellus*, *-ellum*) : bush-*el*, bow-*el*, chanc-*el*, mors-*el*, cast-*le*, mant-*le*, pann-*el*, pomm-*el*.

-en, -in (Lat. *-enus*, *-ena*, *-enum*) : ali-*en*, warr-*en*, flor-*in*, cha-*in*, verm-*in*, ven-*om*.

-er (Lat. *-eria*) : gart-*er*, gutt-*er*, matt-*er*, pray-*er*.

Barrier is the Modern-French *barr-ière.*   See -ry, p. 230.

-erel, -rel, has a diminutive force : cock-*erel*, dott-*erel*, mack-*erel*, pick-*rel*, pick-*erel*; T.E. daint-*rel* = a dain-*ty.*

-ern (Lat. *-erna*) : cav-*ern*, cist-*ern*, tav-*ern* (cp. tab-*ern*-acle).

-et, -ot (N. Fr. *-et*, *-ot;* Fr. *-et*, *-ette; -at*, *-ot*), is a diminutive suffix.

Blank-*et*, cygn-*et*, hatch-*et*, pock-*et*, tick-*et*, chari-*ot*, fagg-*ot*, parr-*ot.*

-et, -ot, -ette (see above) : ball-*et*, ball-*ot*, bill-*ot*, ¬aroqu-*et*, ettiqu-*ette*, coqu-*ette*, from Modern French.

To the original -et has been prefixed l (for *el*),

making a new diminutive suffix, **-lét** in ham-*let*, stream-*let*, &c. See **-el**, p. 226.

-ess (Lat. *-issa*), sign of the feminine gender. See p. 66, § 85.

ess, -ice, -ise (Lat. *-itia*) : distr-*ess*, larg-*ess*, lach-*ess*, rich-*es*, prow-*ess*, franch-*ise*, merchand-*ise*, avar-*ice*, coward-*ice*, just-*ice;* M.E. covet-*eise* has become covet-ous-*ness*.

Serv-*ice* = Lat. serv-*itium ;* burg-*ess* = O.F. *burgeis*, court-*eous* (= M.E. curt-*eis*), and marq-*uis* contain Latin *-ensis*.

-ice, -ise (Lat. *-icem*) : matr-*ice*, pum-*ice*, pent-*house* (= pent-*ise*), jud-*ge*, partrid-*ge*, paun-*ch*.

-ice (Lat. *-icius*) : apprent-*ice*, nov-*ice*, surpl-*ice*, pil-*ch* (= pel-*isse*).

-ic, -c (Lat. *-icus*, *-ica*, Gr. ικός) : log-*ic*, mus-*ic*, phys-*ic*, heret-*ic*, cler-*k* (= cler-*ic*), por-*ch*, per-*ch*, ser-*ge*, for-*ge* (= fabr-*ic*).

-icle (Lat. *-iculus*) : art-*icle*, part-*icle*.

Icicle = O.E. *ís-gic-el* = ice-jag. Cp. *Iseyokels* in footnote to *Piers Plowman*, B. XVII. 227, p. 315.

-iff (Lat. *-ivus*) : bail-*iff*, cait-*iff* (= cap-tive), plaint-*iff*. See **-ive**, p. 234.

-ine, -in (Lat. *-inus*) : div-*ine*, fam-*ine*, medic-*ine*, Das-*in*, citr-*in*, cous-*in*, gobl-*in*, pilgr-*im* (= pere-gr-*ine*), rav-*ine*.

Latin atonic *-ina* disappeared in Old French, hence English *dame, page ;* Modern French has reintroduced it under the form, *-ine*, whence our *machine*.

in (Lat. *-inem*) : marg-*in*, orig-*in*, virg-*in*.

-ism (Lat. *-ismus ;* Gr. -ισμος): de-*ism*, fatal-*ism*, ego-t-*ism*. Many are direct from the Greek, as bar-bar-*ism*, lacon-*ism*.

No words of N.Fr. origin end in *-ism*. Cp. M.E. *sophime* = sophism.

-ist (Lat. *-ista*, Gr. ις-τής): bapt-*ist*, evangel-*ist*, chor-*ist*-er; M.E. soph-*ist*-er = soph-*ist*.

More recent forms are dent-*ist*, de-*ist*, exorc-*ist*, flor-*ist*, medall-*ist*, novel-*ist*, and numerous others.

-ite (Lat. *-ita*, Fr. *-ite*) forms patronymics: Israel-*ite*, Jesu-*it*.

-id (Lat. *-id-*, Gr. *-ιδ-*, Fr. *-ide*): Æne-*id*, Nere-*id*. Many modern chemical words end in *-id*, as alkalo-*id*.

-le (Lat. *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-ulum*): fab-*le*, tab-*le*, stab-*le*, peop-*le;* with preceding *c* (which is sometimes lost), we have artic-*le*, mirac-*le*, pinnac-*le*, obstac-*le*, appar-*el*, dams-*el*, fenn-*el*, lent-*il*, parc-*el* (= partic-*le*), penc-*il*, per-*il*.

Modern forms in *-bule*, *-cle*, *-cule*, are borrowed directly from the Latin.

-l-ence (Lat. *-l-entia*) forms abstract nouns.   There are very few of these forms in M.E.   We find pesti-*lence* and vio-*lence*; other forms are quite recent.   See -lent, p. 234.

-lency is sometimes found for *-lence*, like *-ency* for *-ence*.

-let.   See -et, p. 226.

-m, -me (Lat. *-men*): char-*m*, real-*m*, cri-*me*, nou-*n*, re-now-*n*, leav-*en* (= Lat. leva-*men*, Fr. lev-*ain*).

-me, the modern French form is contained in alu-*m*, legu-*me*, volu-*me*, regi-*me*.

-men, the original Lat. form, is retained in all later loans, as acu-*men*, bitu-*men*, &c.

-m, -me (Lat. *-ma*, Gr. *-μα*): baptis-*m*, phanto-*m* (= phantas-*m*), the-*me*.

From modern French we have borrowed diade-*m*, anagra-*m*, emble-*m*, proble-*m*.

From the Greek we get anagram, epigra-*m*, paradig-*m*, pano-ra-*ma*, enthusias-*m*, pleonas-*m*, telegram.

-ment (Lat. *-mentum*) : argu-*ment*, command-*ment*, enchant-*ment*, gar-*ment*, nourish-*ment*, oint-*ment*, parlia-*ment*.

It is added to Teutonic words, as, acknowledge-*ment*, atone-*ment*, bereave-*ment*, fulfil-*ment*, &c.

-mony (Lat. *-mon-iu-m, -mon-ia*), cere-*mony*, matri-*mony*, testi-*mony*.

-on, -eon, -ion, -in (Lat. *-onem, -ionem*), form many nouns denoting act of, state of : apr-*on*, bac-*on*, cap-*on*, falc-*on*, fel-*on*, gall-*on*, glutt-*on*, mas-*on*, mutt-*on*, sim-plet-*on*, tal-*on*, champ-*ion*, compan-*ion*, clar-*ion*, march-*ion*-ess, on-*ion*, stall-*ion*, scorp-*ion*, pant-*ion*, pig-*eon*, scutch-*eon*, sturg-*eon*, trunch-*eon*.

The N.Fr. forms of the suffix were, (1) *-un, iun;* (2) *-oun, -ioun.*

-oon (Fr. *-on*, Ital. *-one*), ball-*oon*, bat-*oon*, drag-*oon*, harp-*oon*, sal-*oon*, buff-*oon*, poltr-*oon*, are not from N. French.

Some words in *-oon* seem to be augmentatives, as, ball-*oon*, sal-*oon*, &c. ; others are diminutives, as, haberge-*on*, flag-*on*.

-our (Lat. *-orem*) : ard-*our*, col-*our*, fav-*our*, hon-*our*, lab-*our*, lang-*our*, liqu-*our*, rum-*our*.

The Modern French form is *-eur*, as, ard-*eur*, grand-*eur*, liqu-*eur ;* the N.Fr. was (1) *-ur*, (2) *-our*.

-or, -our, -er, (Lat. *-torem*) : jur-*or*, govern-*our*, em-per-*or*, antl-*er*, compil-*er*, divin-*er*, found-*er*, preach-*er*, juggl-*er*, lev-*er*.

N. Fr. *-our* has become *-er* in receiv-*er*, robb-*er*, trench-*er*.

-tor (Lat. *-torem*): audi-*tor*, doc-*tor*, proc-*tor*, trai-*tor*, au-*thor*, indi-*ter*.

-our, -or, -er (Lat. *-orium, -oria*): min-*or*, parl-*our*, raz-*or*, viz-*or*, sciss-*ors*, count-*er*, cens-*er*, lav-*er*, (= lavat-*ory*), mang-*er*, covert-*ure*.

In M.E. we find a few forms in *-orie = ory*. (Cp. Fr. *-oire*,) as lavat-*orie*, orat-*orie*, purgat-*orie*.

-oir (Fr. *-oir*, Lat. *-orium*): abatt-*oir*, from modern French.

-ory, the full form of Lat. *-orium*, occurs in audit-*ory*, dormit-*ory*, refect-*ory*, repert-*ory*.

-ry, -ery (N. Fr. *-erie*): fai-*ry*, hazard-*ry*, jew-*ry*, poet-*ry*, poult-*ry*, spice-*ry*, surg-*ery*, cook-*ery*, house-wife-*ry*, mid-wife-*ry*.

We have a large number of words with this ending unknown to Middle English: as, slave-*ry*, peasant-*ry*, thieve-*ry*, witch-*ery*, trump-*ery*.

-ry (Lat. *-aria*): chival-*ry*, caval-*ry*, carpent-*ry*, pant-*ry*, vint-*ry*. Cp. the modern forms, chapel-*ry*, deane-*ry*, &c.

-ry (Lat. *-arium*): dow-*ry*, laund-*ry*, vest-*ry*, treasu-*ry*.

-son (Lat. *-sionem*): beni-*son*, mali-*son*, le-s-*son*, ori-*son*, pri-*son*, ran-*som*, rea-*son*, sea-*son*, trea-*son*, veni-*son*, fashi-*on*.

With these compare the parallel forms that have come into our language direct from Latin: benedic-*tion*, male-dic-*tion*, lec-*tion*, ora-*tion*, po-*tion*, redemp-*tion*, ra-*tion*, tradi-*tion*, fac-*tion*.

Many words now ending in -tion, as, *nation, salvation,* &c., once ended in *-ciun* (E.E.), *-cioun, -cion* (M.E.)

-sion (Lat. *-sionem*): conver-*sion*, man-*sion*, pen-*sion*,

pas-*sion*, pri-*son*, pro-ces-*sion*, vi-*sion*, &c. ; with foi-*son* (plenty); compare pro-fu-*sion*.

-**sy** (Lat. -*sia*, Gr. -*σις*): catalep-*sy*, drop-*sy*, pal-*sy*, (= paraly-*sis*), fren-*sy*.

Nouns ending in -**sis** are modern words that have come direct from Greek.

-**se**, a still shorter form of this suffix, occurs in apocalyp-*se*, ba-*se*, eclip-*se*.

-**t** (Lat. -*tus*): conduc-*t*, conven-*t*, frui-*t*, strai-*t*, sain-*t*. See **y**, p. 232.

-**t** (Lat. -*tum*): deb-*t*, fea-*t* (= fac-*t*), join-*t*, poin-*t*.

-**t** (Lat. -*ta*): aun-*t*, ren-*t*, &c. See **y**, p. 232.

-**t**, -**te** (Lat. -*ta*, Gr. -*της*): aposta-*te*, come-*t*, hermi-*t*, plane-*t*, prophe-*t*, idio-*t*.

-**ter** (Lat. -*ter*): mis-*ter*, mas-*ter* (= magis-*ter*), minis-*ter*, fri-*ar* (Lat. fra-*ter*).

-**tery** (Lat. -*terium*): mas-*tery*, minis-*tery*.

-**tor** (Lat. -*tor*). See p. 230.

-**dor** in battle-*dor*, mata-*dor*, is a Spanish form.

-**trix** (Lat. -*trix*), a feminine suffix. See p. 67.

-**ter**, -**tre** (Lat. -*trum*, Gr. -*τρον*): clois-*ter*, spec-*tre*, scep-*tre*.

The full form occurs in modern words, as, "*spectrum* analysis."
Another form of -*trum* is -*crum*, in *sepul-chre; brum* in *mem-brum*. Cp. *candela-brum*, *cere-brum*.

-**tude** (Lat. -*tudinem*): beati-*tude*, multi-*tude*, &c., are direct from Latin. *Cus-tom* = Lat. *consuetudinem*.

-**ty** (Lat. -*tatem*): beau-*ty*, boun-*ty*, chari-*ty*, cruel-*ty*, feal-*ty*, (= fidelity), frail-*ty*, &c.

-**ule**. See -**le**, p. 228.

-**ure** (Lat. -*ura*): advent-*ure*, apert-*ure*, creat-*ure*

forfeit-*ure*, nat-*ure*, nurt-*ure*, meas-*ure*, past-*ure*, se-pult-*ure*, stat-*ure*, vest-*ure*.

Arm-*our* = M. Lat. *armatura*.

-y (Lat. -*ia*) : cop-*y*, famil-*y*, felon-*y*, nav-*y*, stor-*y*, victor-*y*, &c., Ital-*y*, Arab-*y* and Arab-*ia*.

-y (Lat. -*ium*) : horolog-*y*, jo-*y*, stud-*y*. Directly from the Latin are formed augur-*y*, obsequ-*y*, remed-*y*, &c.

-y (Lat. *atus*) : attorn-*ey*, deput-*y*, all-*y*.

Many words in -cy, -sy, are formed on the model of Fr. words in -*cie*, Lat. -*tia* :—cura-*cy*, minstrel-*cy*, &c. Cp. degene ra-*cy*, intima-*cy*, &c., the corresponding adjectives of which end in -*ate*.

-y (Lat. -*t-us*), cler-g-*y* : coun-t-*y*, duch-*y*, trea-t-*y*.

-y (Lat. -*ta*), arm-*y* : embass-*y*, chimn-*ey*, countr-*y*, dela-*y*, destin-*y*, entr-*y*, journ-*ey*, jur-*y*, part-*y*, vall-*ey*. See -ee, p. 226.

-y (Lat. -*ies*) : progen-*y*.

II. Adjective Suffixes.

-al (Lat. -*alis*), annu-*al*, besti-*al*, casu-*al*, equ-*al*, loy-*al* (= leg-*al*), roy-*al* (= reg-*al*), &c. See p. 224.

-al forms many new derivatives, as, festiv-*al*, celesti-*al*, comic -*al*, mathematic-*al*.

-an, -ain (Lat. -*anus*) : cert-*ain*, germ-*an*, germ-*ain*, hum-*an*, me-*an*.

There are numerous adjectives in -*an*, of recent formation that have no corresponding Latin form in -*anus :* agrari-*an*, barbari-*an*, diluvi-*an*, pedestri-*an*. See an, p. 224.

-ane (Lat. -*anus*) : hum-*ane*, transmont-*ane* are modern forms.

-ant, -ent : err-*ant*, ramp-*ant*, trench-*ant*, obedi-*ent*, pati-*ent*, &c.   See -ant, -ent, p. 224.

-ar (Lat. -*aris*) : famili-*ar*, regul-*ar*, singul-*ar*.

-ary (Lat -*arius*) : contr-*ary*, necess-*ary*, second-*ary*. See -ar, p. 225.

Arbitr-*ary*, disciplin-*ary*, honor-*ary*, and many English derivatives in -*ary*, having no Latin form in -*arius*.

The Lat. -*arius* is sometimes changed into -*arious*, as, nef-*arious*, greg-*ari-ous*.   Sometimes -*an* is added to -*ari*, as, agr-*ari-an*, antiqu-*ari-an*, &c.

-atic (Lat. -*aticus*) : fan-*atic*, lun-*atic*.

Most nouns in -*atic*, -*tic*, come directly from the Latin, as aqu-*atic*, rus-*tic*, domes-*tic*, &c.   See -age, p. 224.

-ate (Lat. -*atus*) : delic-*ate*, desol-*ate*, determin-*ate*, and some few other words in -*ate* are found in M.E. coming directly from the Latin.   But most words with this ending are modern formations.

Had these words come from N. Fr. they would end in -*y*. Compare *privy*, secret, (Fr. *privé*), with *private*.

-ble, -able (Lat. -*bilis*) : accept-*able*, abomin-*able*, fee-*ble*, foi-*ble* (= fle-*bilis*), mov-*able*, sta-*ble*.

The suffix -able is added to many Romance stems : as, agree-*able*, change-*able*, favour-*able*, deceiv-*able*, &c.

It is also added to Teutonic stems : as, break-*able*, eat-*able*, laugh-*able*, sale-*able*.

Terms in -*ible*, as aud-*ible*, vis-*ible*, are formed directly from the Latin.

-ble (Lat. -*plex*) : dou-*ble* (= du-*ple*), tre-*ble* (= tri-*ple*).

-ese (Ital. -*ese*, Lat. -*ensis*) : Chin-*ese*, Malt-*ese*.   See p. 227.

-esque (Fr. *-esque*, Lat. *-iscus*): burl-*esque*, grot-*esque*, pictur-*esque; morrice* (dance) = mor-*esco i.e.* Moorish. This *-esque* is allied to English *-ish*, hence the forms Fren-*ch* and Dan-*ish*, in which the Fr. suffix is anglicised.

-ac (Lat. *-acus*) : demoni-*ac*, mani-*ac*.

-ic (Lat. *-icus, -ica, -icum*): aromat-*ic*, barbar-*ic*, frant-*ic*, schismat-*ic*.   See p. 227.

It is often combined with -al, as cler-*ic-al*, mag-*ic-al*, mus-*ic-al*, &c.

In Old French *icus* became *i*, whence our *enem-y* = Fr. *ennemi*, Lat. *inimicus ;* Fr. p-*ie* = *p*-ica ; *-ique* is the modern Fr. form. Cp. ant-*ic* (old form), with ant-*ique* (modern derivative).

-id (Lat. *-idus*) : ac-*id*, pall-*id*, tep-*id*, rig-*id*, &c.

In N.Fr. this *-id* disappears or is changed. Cp. Eng. *neat*, Fr. *net*, Lat. nit-*idus*.   In modern learned Fr. words *-ide* is used as rig-*ide*, sap-*ide*, &c.

-ile (Lat *-ilis*) : frag-*ile*, ster-*ile*, &c.

-l, -le (Lat. *-e-lis, -i-lis*): cru-*e-l*, civ-*i-l*, frai-*l* (= frag-*i-le*), ab-*le*, subt-*le*, gent-*le*.

-ine (Lat. *-inus*) : div-*ine*, citr-*in*.

Most of the words in *-ine* are of modern formation : as, aquil-*ine*, can-*ine*, genu-*ine*, infant-*ine*, &c.

-ive (Lat. *-ivus*): able to, inclined to, act-*ive*, attent-*ive*, fugit-*ive*, pens-*ive*, &c.   See -iff, p. 227.

In Early and Middle English these adjectives ended in *-if :* as, *actif, attentif*, &c. The *f* has dropped off in *hasty, jolly, testy.*   Cp. *massive* with T.E. *massy ;* and *baily* = *bailiff.* We have a large number of modern derivatives in *-ive*, as, coerc-*ive*, conclus-*ive*, affirmat-*ive*, &c.   We have one hybrid, talk-*ative*.

-lent (Lat. *-l-entus*) full of : corpu-*lent*, opu-*lent*, vio-*lent*, &c.

-ory (Lat. *-orius*) : amat-*ory*, mandat-*ory*, &c.

-ose (Lat. *-osus*) : bellic-*ose*, joc-*ose*, mor-*ose*.

-ous (Lat. *-osus*) full, like : copi-*ous*, curi-*ous*, danger-*ous*, fam-*ous*, lepr-*ous*, &c.

-ous also represents Lat. *-us* in the following :—

(1) Assidu-*ous*, continu-*ous*, ingenu-*ous*, &c.

(2) Anxi-*ous*, arbore-*ous*, &c.

(3) In the endings *-vorous, -fluous, -par-ous* :—omnivor-*ous*, superflu-*ous*, ovipar-*ous*, &c.

The use of -ous has been much extended in modern English. It is added to adjective stems, as, alacri-*ous*, asper-*ous*, atroci-*ous* precipit-*ous*, carbonifer-*ous*.

It occurs in many modern derivatives, as contradict-*ious*, felicit-*ous*, joy-*ous*.

It is added to some few Teutonic roots, as murder-*ous*.

Court-eous = E. E. curt-*eis*, O. Fr. curt-*eis*, court-*ois*.

Boister-ous = M. E. *bostois, boist-ous, bostwys,* from Welsh *bwystus,* rough, rude.

Right-eous. Here *-eous* is a corruption of *-wise.* See § 238, p. 213.

Wondr-ous. Here *-ous* is for the adverbial suffix *-s.*
> " This matter is *wonders* precious."
> > *Everyman, O. E. Plays,* ed. Hazlitt, I. p. 99.

Wonder (used as an adverb) = O.E. *wundr-um.*

Wondr-ous-ly = *wonder-s-ly* = M. E. *wonderly.*
> " Of the elements so *wonderly* formed."
> > *The Four Elements,* ed. Hazlitt, p. 16.

-t, -te (Lat. *-tus*), discree-*t*, straigh-*t*, strai-*t*, modes-*t*, hones-*t*, chas-*te*, mu-*te*.

Words like *elect, perfect, distinct,* &c. have come direct from the Latin.

In Fr. the *c* disappears before *t.* Cp. *strait* and *strict.*

-und, -ond (Lat. *-undus*) : ro-*und* (= rot-*und*), joc-*und*, sec-*ond*.

-y (Lat. *-ous*) : spong-*y*, (Lat. *spongiosus*). We find *spongious* in Gerarde's Herbal.

-y (N.Fr. *-if*, Lat. *-ivus*) : hast-*y*, joll-*y*, mass-*y*, test-*y*. See -ive, p. 234.

III. Verbal Suffixes.

-ate (Lat. *-atus*, the ending of the pass. part.) forms verbs from Latin and French verbs : agit-*ate*, alien-*ate*, assassin-*ate*, &c. ; and from nouns and adjectives : accentu-*ate*, filtr-*ate*, superannu-*ate*, &c.

-ise, -ize (Lat. *-izare*, Fr. *iser*, Gr. *-ιζω*) forms verbs from nouns and adjectives : colon-*ize*, pulver-*ize*, civil-*ize*, fertil-*ize*.

-ish (Lat. *esc-o ;* Fr. *-iss* in the pres. part. of verbs in *-ir*): establ-*ish*, flour-*ish*, fin-*ish*, nour-*ish*, pol-ish, &c.

fy (Lat. *-ficare*, Fr. *-fier*) : edi-*fy*, magni-*fy*, signi-*fy*.

245. COMPOSITION WITH ROMANIC PREFIXES.

Words with these prefixes are divisible into two classes, (1) those that have come from the Latin through the Norman French, (2) those that have come directly from the Latin. The first class of words is of course the oldest. See § 244, p. 223.

A, av (Fr. *a, av ;* Lat. *a, ab, abs,* away from) :—

(1) A-vaunt (Fr. *a-vant ;* Lat. *ab-ante*), a-d-vance, a-d-vantage, a-vert, a-bridge, a-s-soil (*absolve*), abs-tain, ab-ound, ab-use.

(2) *Ab*-dicate, *ab*-sent, *abs*-cond, &c.

A, ad (O.Fr. *ad, a;* Fr. *à;* Lat. *ad,* to) :—

By assimilation *ad-* becomes *ac-, af-, ag-, al-, an-, ap-, ar-, as-, at-*.

(1) A-bate, ac-quaint (M.Lat. *ad-cognitare*), ac-quit, ac-cord, (O.Fr. *a-cointer*), a-c-count.

A-chieve, ac-cuse, a-d-venture, (M.E. *a-venture*), ad-journ (M.E. *ajorné*), ad-join, ad-verse, ad-versary, af-firm, af-fiance, af-finity, af-ford, a-gree, ag-grieve, (M.E. *ag-regge* and *a-greve*), a-d-monish (M.E. *a-moneste*), a-mount, a-merce, al-ledge, al-ly, al-low, ap-parel, ap-pear, ap-pease, ap-ply, ap-proach, ar-rive, as-sail, as-sault (M.E. *asaute*), as-size, as-suage, as-semble, at-tain, a-venge, a-vow.

Cp. the later loans *adieu, adroit, alarm, alert, apart, &c.*

(2) *Ad-*apt, *ac-*cept, *ac-*cumulate, *ag-*gravate, *al-*leviate, *an-*nex, &c.

An, ante (Fr. *ans, ains;* Lat. *ante*):—

(1) An-cestor (M.E. *ancessoure*), an-cestry, v-an-guard (= Fr. *av-ant-garde*).

(2) *Ante-*cede, *ante-*meridian, *ante-*chamber.

(3) *Ante-*date, *anti-*cipate, seem formed on the model of the Fr. *anti-dater, anti-cipier*.

Circum, circu (Lat. *circum,* around) :—

Circum-cise, circu-it, are found in M.E.

Modern compounds with this prefix are very common : *circum-*scribe, *circum-*stance, &c.

Co, com, con (Fr. *co, com, con;* Lat. *cum,* with) :—

Com becomes col before *l,* cor before *r,* and co before vowels.

(1) Col-late, com-mand, com-mon, com-pany.

con-ceive, con-ceit, con-demn, con-duit, con-found, con-strue, con-vey, con-voy, &c. ; coun-sel, coun-tenance, co-vent, con-vent.

Couch (Lat. *collocare*) ; count (Lat. *computare*), cost (Lat. *constare*), custom (Lat. *consuetudinem*), cover, (Lat. *co-operire*), curry (Fr. *cor-royer*, for O.Fr. *con-roi ;* Lat. *con-redum*,) (*redum* = arrangements from a Teutonic root *red* to arrange. Cp. Flemish *reden*, Goth. *raidjan*, to prepare, make *ready*).

Quail, to curdle (Fr. *coailler*, Lat. *coagulare*).

(2) Modern forms are very numerous : *col*-locate, *com*-prehend, *con*-duct, *cor*-relation, *co*-eval, *co*-executor, &c.

(3) **Co** is sometimes joined to Teutonic roots, as, *co*-worker, *co*-elder.

Counter, contra (Fr. *contre ;* Lat. *contra*, against) :

The N.Fr. form *counter* is used as a separate word in "to run *counter* to." It has given rise to the verb en-*counter* (M.E. *countren*).

(1) **Counter-feit, counter-plead, counter-pane, cont-roller** (cp. Fr. *contrôle* = *contre-rôle*), **contr-ary, contra-diction.**

(2) *Counter*-act, *counter*-balance, *counter*-mand, *contra*-vene, *contro*-vert, &c.

(3) *contra-band* is a modern French loan.

De (Fr. *de, dé ;* Lat. *de*, down, from, away) :—

(1) **De-ceive, de-ceit, de-clare, de-cline, de-crease, de-fend, de-feat, de-form, de-gree, de-light, de-ny, de-liver, de-nounce, de-prave, de-serve, de-sire, de-scend, de-scry,** (= de-scribe), **de-spise, de-spite, de-stroy, de-vise, de-vour, &c.**

Di-s-dain (M.E. *dedain*), di-still (M.E. *destylle*).

(2) *De*-ception, *de*-fect, *de*-lectable, &c.

De, dis, di (Fr. *dés, dé;* Lat. *dis, di,* asunder, in two, difference, negation) :—

In E.E. and M.E. the prefix dis has its N.Fr. form *des* or *de.*

(1) De-part, de-fy, de-lay, dis-cover, dis-charge, disguise, dis-honour, display, dis-turb, dis-please, dispute, &c.

(2) *Dis*-cern, *di*-gest, *dif*-fer, &c.

(3) *Deluge* = mod. Fr. *déluge,* Lat. *di-luvium.*

(4) The following are hybrids : *dis*-believe (= misbelieve), *dis*-like (= mislike), *dis*-own, &c.

E, es, ex (Fr. *es, e;* Lat. *ex,* out of, from) :—

(1) E-late, e-lection, as-say, es-say, es-cape, issue, es-pecial, s-pecial, s-ample (= ex-ample), ensample, ex-amine, ex-cite, ex-cuse, ex-ile, a-mend (= e-mend), a-fraid (Lat. *exfrigidare*) a-bash = O.Fr. *es-bahir.*

(2) *Ex*-alt, *e*-lect, *ex*-ecute, *ex*-empt, *ex*-pect, &c.; *ex*-emperor, *ex*-mayor.

(3) *Efface, élite* (= elect), are from modern French.

Extra (Lat. *extra,* beyond.)

(1) *Extra*-ordinary, *extra*-vagant.

(2) *Extra*-work, *extra*-freight, are hybrids.

Em, en, in (Fr. *em, en;* Lat. *in,* in, into, on) :—

(1) Em-balm, em-bellish, em-brace, en-chant, en-counter, en-cumber, en-dite, en-dow, en-gage, en-force, en-hance, en-join, en-joy, en-rich, en-tice, en-treat, en-viron, en-vy, &c.; an-oint, am-bush, im-pair, im-prison, il-lusion, in-cense, in-cline, in-quire (en-quire).

Many words once beginning with en- now have in-.

…e) :—

…ate, pre-sence, pre-
… *prædicare*).
… numerous : *pre*-dict,

…ry, past) :—

… Lat. *pro*, forth, for-

…nose, pur-sue, pur-
… pro-nounce.
…ul, *pro*-noun.

…ck, again) :—

… re-creant, re-cover,
… pair, re-pent, re-
…ble, re-treat, r-ally
… *dere*), *red*-ound.
…hate, *re*-duce, *re-act*

…, *re*-new, &c.

Cp. M.E. *arerage*

…part, away) :—

R

(2) *In*-nate, *il*-lumine, *im*-migrate, &c.

(3) Hybrids are *em*-bolden, *en*-shrine, *en*-dear, &c.

In (Lat. *in*, not) :—

(1) *In*-nocent, *in*-constance, *in*-fant, *im*-perfect (= M.E. *imparfit*).

(2) It is prefixed to nouns, adjectives, and verbs :—

(*a*) *In*-convenience, *im*-piety, *il*-liberality.

(*b*) *In*-cautious, *im*-politic, *il*-legal, *ir*-regular.

(*c*) *In*-capacitate, *in*-dispose, *il*-legalize, *im*-mortalize.

Un often takes the place of *in*, as *un*-able, *un*-apt, *un*-certain, &c.

Enter, inter, intro (O.Fr. *enter;* Fr. *entre;* Lat. *inter*, *intro*, within, between) :—

(1) **Enter**-prise, enter-tain, inter-dict (= M.E. *enter-dite*), *inter*-change (M.E. *enter-change*).

(2) *Inter*-cept, *inter*-sect, *intro*-duce, &c.

Ob (Lat. *ob*, in front of, against) :—

(1) **Ob**-lige, ob-ey, oc-cupy, of-fer, of-fend, of-fence, of-fice, op-pose.

(2) *Ob*-ject, *ob*-struct, *oc*-cur, *of*-ficiate, &c.

Per (O.Fr. *per;* Fr. *par;* Lat. *per*, through) :—

(1) Per-ceive, per-form, per-ish, par-don, pur-sue.

(2) *Per*-jure, *per*-secute, *pel*-lucid, *pol*-lute, &c.

Post (Lat. *post*, after) :—

(1) *Puny* = Fr. *puîné*, O.Fr. *puis-né*, Lat. *post natus*.

(2) *Post*-pone, *post*-date, *post*-script, &c.

Pre (Fr. *pré;* Lat. *præ,* before) :—

(1) Pre-cept, pre-face, pre-late, pre-sence, pre-tend, pro-vost, pre-ach (= Lat. *prædicare*).

(2) Modern formations are numerous : *pre*-dict, *pre*-cinct, *pre*-announce, &c.

Preter (Fr. *préter;* Lat. *præter,* past) :—

(1) *Preter*-ite, *preter*-mit.

(2) *Preter*-natural, *preter*-perfect.

Par, pur, pro (Fr. *por, pour;* Lat. *pro,* forth, forward, before) :—

(1) Por-tray, pur-chase, pur-pose, pur-sue, pur-vey, pro-cede, pro-cess, pro-cure, pro-nounce.

(2) *Pro*-vide, *pro*-pose, *pro*-consul, *pro*-noun.

(3) *Por*-trait = Fr. *pour*-trait.

Re, red (Fr. *re;* Lat. *red, re,* back, again) :—

(1) Re-bell, re-ceive, re-claim, re-creant, re-cover, re-join, re-nounce, re-member, re-pair, re-pent, re-prove, re-quire, re-store, re-semble, re-treat, r-ally (Lat. *re-alligare*), re-n-der (Lat. *red-dere*), *red*-ound.

(2) Modern formations : *re*-probate, *re*-duce, *re-ad* &c.

(3) *Re*-but = Fr. *re-buter.*

(4) Hybrids : *re*-build, *re*-mind, *re*-new, &c.

Retro (Fr. *rière;* Lat. *retro*) :—

(1) *Rear*-ward, *arrear, rear.* Cp. M.E. *areruge* (arrears).

(2) *Retro*-grade, *retro*-spect, &c.

Se, sed (Fr. *sé;* Lat. *sed, se,* apart, away) :—

(1) *Se*-ver, *se*-veral.

(2) *Se*-clude, *se*-parate, *sed-ition*, &c.

Sub, so (O.Fr. *so ;* Fr. *se, su, sou ;* Lat. *sub*, under, up from below) :—

(1) **Sub**-tle, **suc**-cour (M.E. *socour*), **suc**-ceed, **suf**-fer, *sum*-mons, **sup**-pose, **sus**-tain, *so*-journ, &c.

(2) *Sub*-jection, *suc*-cinct, *sug*-gest, &c.   It denotes (*a*) diminution, as *sub-* tepid ; (*b*) of a lower order, as *sub*-committee.

(3) Hybrids : *sub*-let, *sub*-kingdom.

Sur, super (Fr. *sur ;* Lat. *super*, above, beyond) :—

(1) **Sur**-coat, **sur**-face, **sur**-feit, **sur**-plice, **sur**-name, **sur**-vey ; **super**-flu-ous, **super**-scription, which occur in **M.E.**, are directly from the Latin.

(2) Modern forms are *sur*-prise, *sur*-pass, *sur*-charge, *super*-ficies, *super*-scribe, &c., *summerset* = Fr. *soubre-saut*, Lat. *super-saltum*.

Tres, tra, trans (O.Fr. *tres ;* Fr. *tré, tra ;* Lat. *trans*, across) :—

(1) **Tres**-pass, **tra**-itor, **trea**-son, **tra**-vel, **tra**-verse, **trans**-figure, **trans**-form, **trans**-late, **trans**-migration.

(2) *Trans*-cription, *trans*-port, *tra*-dition, &c., **are** modern forms.

Ultra (Lat. *ultra*, beyond) :—

(1) **Out**-rage.

(2) *Ultra*-liberal.

Vis, vice (Fr. *vis;* Lat. *vice,* instead of) :—

(1) **Vic**-ar.

(2) *Vis*-count, *vice*-roi, &c.

Bis, bi (Lat. *bis,* twice ; *bini,* two by two) :—

(1) None.

(2) *Bis*-sextile, *bi*-ennial, *bin*-ocular.

(3) *Biscuit* is modern French *biscuit,* Lat. *bis-coctum.*

Demi (Fr. *demi;* Lat. *dimidium,* half) :—

(1) *Demi*-god, *demi*-quaver.

Semi (Lat. *semi,* half) :—

(1) *Semi*-circle, *semi*-column.

Mal, mau, male (Fr. *mal, mau;* Lat. *male,* ill) :—

- (1) **Mau**-gre, **mal**-ady.

(2) *Male*-diction, *mal*-evolent.

(3) *Mal*-treat, *mal*-content.

Non (Lat. *non,* not) :—

(1) **Noun**-power impotence. Chaucer's *Boethius,* p. 75.

(2) *Non*-sense, *non*-existent.

(3) *Non*-chalance, *non*-pareil.

Mis (Fr. *mes;* Lat. *minus,* less) :—

(1) **Mis**-chance (M.E. *mescheance*), **mis**-*chief* (M.E. *meschief*); (2) **mis**-fortune and **mis**-nomer are modern analogous forms.

(3) *Més*-alliance.

Pen (Fr. *pén;* Lat. *pæne,* almost) :—

Pen-insula, *pen*-ultimate.

Sans, sine (Fr. *sans*, Lat. *sine*, without) :—

(2) *Sine*-cure, *sin*-cere.

(3) *Sans*-culotte, *sans*-culottism.

246. Greek Prefixes.

Nearly all compounds with Greek prefixes are of late origin.

An-, a- (ἀν, ἀ), *negative* like Lat. *in-* and Eng. *un-*: an-archy, an-æsthetic, a-pathy.

Amphi- (ἀμφί), about, on both sides. Cp. Lat. *am, amb,* O.E. *umbe, ymbe,* about : amphi-bious, amphi-theatre.

Ana- (ἀνά), *up,* up to, again, back : ana-logy, ana-lysis, an-ec-dote.

Anti- (ἀντί), opposite to, against : anti-dote, anti-pathy, anti-thesis, ant-arctic.

Apo-, ap- (ἀπό), away from, from. Cp. Lat. *ab*, Eng. *off:* apo-logy, apo-strophe, apo-gee, apo-crypha, ap-helion.

Apocalypse, from the Latin, occurs in Middle English ; also *pocalips* (*Piers Plowman,* B. p. 215).

Arch-, archi- (ἀρχή), chief, head : arch-heretic, arch-aism, archi-tect.

Shakespeare uses *arch* as a root in *King Lear,* ii. 1, "My worthy *arch.*" *Arch-bishop* occurs in M.E. Chaucer has *archi-wyves* (*Clerkes Tale*), *archi-deknes* (*Prologue*). The last existed in O.E.

Auto-, aut (αὐτο), self : auto-crat, auto-graph.

Cata-, cath-, cat- (κατά), down, downwards.

about: **cata**-ract, **cata**-strophe, **cath**-olic, **cat**-hedral, **cat**-egorize.

Dia- (διά), through : **dia**-meter, **dia**-gonal.

Di- (δί). Cp. Lat. *dis*, Eng. *to:* **di**-syllable, (often mis-spelt *dissyllable*) **di**-phthong.

Dys- (δυς) ill : **dys**-peptic, **dys**-entery.

Ec-, ex- (ἐκ, ἐξ) out, forth ; cp. Lat. *ex:* **ec**-centric, **ec**-lectic, **ex**-orcism.

En- (ἐν), in. Cp. Lat. *in-* : **en**-thusiasm, **en**-tomo-logy, **en**-comium, **em**-piric, **em**-phasis, **el**-liptical.

Epi-, ep- (ἐπί), upon, on, by : **epi**-demic, **epi**-taph, **epi**-tome, **ep**-och.

Eu-, well : **eu**-logy, **eu**-phony.

U in *Utopia* is for ου, not ευ.

Evangelist occurs in M.E. and comes through the Latin.

Hemi- (ἡμι), half : **hemi**-stich, **hemi**-sphere.

Hyper- (ὑπέρ), above, beyond. Cp. Lat. *super*, Eng. *over* : **hyper**-bole, **hyper**-critical.

Hypo-, hyp- (ὑπο), under. Cp. Lat. *sub* : **hypo**-crite, **hypo**-thesis, **hyp**-hen.

Meta-, met- (μετά), after, *trans:* **meta**-phorical, **meta**-morphosis, (cp. Latin trans-form), **met**-hod.

Mono-, mon- (μονο), single, alone : **mono**-graph, **mon**-archy. Also *monk* = O.E. *munec.*

Pan- (πάν), all : **pan**-theistic, **pan**-acea.

Para-, par- (παρά), beside, against : **para**-dox, **para**-site, **para**-phrase, **par**-helion, **para**-ble. Cp. *parley*, from Fr. through Latin.

Peri- (περί), round. Cp. Lat. *per*, Eng. *for* : **peri**-meter, **peri**-odical, **peri**-phrasis.

Pro- (πρό), before. Cp. Lat. *pro*, Eng. *fore* : **pro**-logue, **pro**-gnostic.

Pro-phet and *pro-phecy, prologue, proem* occur in M.E. **Pro**-gramme is Fr.

Pros- (πρός), towards : pros-elyte, pros-ody.

Syn- (σύν), with : syn-opsis, syn-tax, sym-pathy, syl-logism, sy-stem.

247. We have some few Greek suffixes that have come from Latin though Norman-French. See suffixes, -ic (pp. 227, 234), -m (p. 228), -ist (p. 228) -sy (p. 231), -ize (p. 236).

APPENDIX.

Note to p. 68. he and she. In M.E. we find he and she used as nouns.

> " Queþer-sum it war *sco* or *he,*
>   To godd be-taght þan suld it be."
>
> <div align="right">C. MUNDI, C. 1. 10205.</div>

Note to p. 96. former = O.E. *forma,* M.E. *forme ;* the r seems to have arisen out of the final e ; former occurs in the *Göttingen* text of the Cursor Mundi; but *Fairfax* has forme and *Cotton* form. See Cursor Mundi, (ed. Morris, p. 526, L 9156).

Note to p. 122. What and aught: "gif he *hwæt* dælan wyle " = " ʒif he *awiht* delan wule." (See *O. E. Hom.* i. p. 297 and p. 103.)

Note to p. 189. a = of. Cp. the Göttingen and Cotton texts of the C. Mundi, l. 8968.

> " Hu all þis werld sal wite *awai.*"
>
> <div align="right">COTTON.</div>
>
> " Hou all þis world suld wit *of way.*"
>
> <div align="right">GÖTTINGEN.</div>

"Wendaþ mîn heafod *ofdune,* forþon þe mîn Drihten Hælend Crist of heofenum *adune* to eorþan astag."

"Turn my head *adown* (downwards), because my Lord Jesus Christ came from heaven *adown* to earth."—*Blickling Homilies,* ed. Morris, p. 191.

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the pages.